373

"AUTHORIZED TEXT-BOOKS."

An Introductory Latin Book.

Intended as an Elementary Drill Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language, and as an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader, and Composition. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 162 Pages.

A Latin Grammar.

For Schools and Colleges. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 355 Pages.

A Latin Reader.

Intended as a Companion to the author's Latin Grammar; with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 212 Pages.

A First Greek Book.

Comprising an Outline of the Forms and Inflections of the Language, a complete Analytical Syntax, and an Introductory Greek Reader, with Notes and Vocabularies. By Albert Harkness, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University, author of Harkness's Latin Grammar, &c., &c.

12mo. 276 Pages.

COPP, CLARK & CO.,

PUBLISHERS,

17 and 19 KING STREET EAST, TORONTO.

George Deacon
C. I.
St Catharines
Feb. 26th 1876

COPP, CLARK & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

By A. HARKNESS, PH.D., Professor in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface:

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.

6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/c2introductorywest00hark

The "AUTHORIZED TEXT BOOK" Series.

AN

INTRODUCTORY

LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN

ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,

ON THE

INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER, AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS,

Professor in Brown University,

AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

TORONTO:

COPP, CLARK & CO.,

47 FRONT STREET EAST.

1875.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by
ALBERT HARKNESS,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

PREFACE.

The volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

Page.
Fifth Declension 28
Exercise XI. 29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions 30
Exercise XII. 33
Third Declension 35
Exercise XIII. 37
Comparison of Adjectives 38
Exercise XIV. 39
Numeral Adjectives 40
Exercise XV. 42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns 43
Possessive 44
Demonstrative 44
Relative 45
Interrogative 46
Indefinite 46
Exercise XVI. 47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices 48
Moods 49
Tenses 50
Numbers 50
Persons 51
Conjugation 51
The Verb Sum 52
Exercise XVII. 56
" XVIII. 57
" XIX. 60
First Conjugation 62
Exercise XX. 6

Page.
Exercise XXI. 67
" XXII. 69
" XXIII. 71
" XXIV. 73
" XXV. 74
" XXVI. 75
" XXVII. 76
Second Conjugation 78
Exercise XXVIII. 82
" XXIX. 83
" XXX. 84
" XXXI. 85
" XXXII. 86
" XXXIII. 87
" XXXIV. 88
Third Conjugation 90
Exercise XXXV. 94
" XXXVI. 95
" XXXVII. 96
" XXXVIII. 97
" XXXIX. 97
" XL. 98
" XLI. 99
Fourth Conjugation 100
Exercise XLII. 104
" XLIII. 104
" XLIV. 105
" XLV. 106
" XLVI. 107
" XLVII. 107
" XLVIII. 108
Verbs in IO 110
Exercise XLIX. 112

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.
I. Classification of Sentences 114
II. Simple Sentences 115

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

Section.		Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns	117
	Exercise L.	117
	" LI.	119
II.	Nominative	120
	Exercise LII.	120
III.	Vocative	121
	Exercise LIII.	121
IV.	Accusative	122
	Exercise LIV.	123
	" LV.	124
	" LVI.	125
V.	Dative	126
	Exercise LVII.	127
	" LVIII.	129
VI.	Genitive	130
	Exercise LIX.	131
	" LX.	132
VII.	Ablative	133
	Exercise LXI.	135
	" LXII.	137
	" LXIII.	138
	" LXIV.	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions	141
	Exercise LXV.	142
Suggestions to the Learner		143
Latin-English Vocabulary		147
English-Latin Vocabulary		157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
act.	active.	p.	page.
adv.	adverb.	part.	particle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person.
f.	feminine.	plur., *or* pl.	plural.
gen.	genitive.	prep.	preposition.
indef.	indefinite.	rel.	relative.
interrog.	interrogative.	sing.	singular.
m.	masculine.	voc.	vocative.

INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. Latin Grammar treats of the principles of the Latin language.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.[1]

ALPHABET.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. **Classes of Letters.** — Letters are divided into two classes:

I. *Vowels*		a, e, i, o, u, y.
II. *Consonants:* —		
1. Liquids		l, m, n, r.
2. Spirants		h, s.
3. Mutes:	1) Labials	p, b, f, v.
	2) Palatals	c, g, k, q, j.
	3) Linguals	t, d.
4. Double Consonants		x, z.

4. **Combinations of Letters.** — We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*, — combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*, — *x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

[1] Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.[1] For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

I. English Method.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their *long* or *short* English sounds.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds —*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:[2] *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.[3]

3. In penultimate[4] and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A unaccented* has the sound of *a final* in America: *men'-sa*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound —*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

---

[1] Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

[2] Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

[3] In these rules, no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

[4] Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Té'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *dī'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-ĭ-nus*, *pat'-rĭ-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like e:

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (Ce'-sar), *Oe'-ta* (E'-ta).

2) short: *Daed'-ă-lus* (Ded'-a-lus), *Oed'-ĭ-pus*.

Au as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.[1]

Exercise I.

Give the sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs in the following words.

1. Men'-sam,[2] men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,[3] men-sa'-rum.[4] 2. Ho'-ram,[5] ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,[6] ho-ra'-rum.[7] 3. Scho'-la,[8] scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum. 4. Co-ro'-na,[8] co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.[9]

[1] *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs; but, when so used, they have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cui*.

[2] 8, 2; 8, 1. [3] 8, 2; 9; 7, 1. [4] 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1. [5] 7, 3; 8, 1. [6] 7, 3; 9; 7, 1 [7] 7, 3; 8, 1. [8] 7, 3; 7, 3, 1). [9] 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T,** and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like s and j) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*; and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound as in son, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S final* after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in time: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor).

12. **C, S, T,** and **X — Aspirated.** — Before *i*, preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated, — *c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, x that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo*, preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on).

13. **Silent Consonants.** — An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

Exercise II.

Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words.

1. Ci'-vis,[1] civ'-i-um, civ'-i-bus. 2. Car'-men,[2] car'-mi-nis, car'-mi-ne.[3] 3. Rex,[4] re'-gis,[5] re'-gi, re'-gum.[5] 4. Ca'-put,[6] cap'-i-tis, cap'-i-tum. 5. A'-ci-em,[7] a'-ci-e, a'-ci-es.[8] 6. Ars,[8] ar'-tis, ar'-tes,[8] ar'-ti-um.[9]

---

[1] 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.
[2] 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.
[3] 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.
[4] 11, 4.
[5] 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.
[6] 11, 1, and 3.
[7] 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.
[8] 11, 2, 1).
[9] 12.

II. Continental Method.[1]

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound;[2] but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel-sounds are as follows:

a like ä in father: e.g., *a′-ra.*
e " ā made: " *plē′-bes.*
i " ē me: " *ī′-ri.*
o " ō no: " *ō′-ro.*
u " ô do: " *ū′-num.*
y " ē me; " *Nȳ′-sa.*

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like a in made: e.g., *aē′-tas*, *coē′-lum.*
au " ou " out: " *au′-rum.*[3]

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method; but it varies somewhat in different countries.

Exercise III.

Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words, according to the Continental Method.

1. Hō′-rā, hō′-răm, hō′-rās, hō′-rīs, hō′-rae, hō-rā′-rŭm. 2. Glō′-rĭ-ă, glō′-rĭ-ăm, glō′-rĭ-ae. 3. Dō′-nŭm, dō′-nī, dō′-

[1] If the *English Method* is adopted as the standard in the school, this outline of the *Continental Method* should be omitted.

[2] These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

[3] In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately; but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs, with nearly the same sound as in English.

nō, dō′-nă, dō-nō′-rŭm, dō′-nis. 4. Cī′-vĭs, cī′-vī, cī′-vĕm, cī′-vēs, cĭv′-ĭ-ŭm, cĭv′-ĭ-bŭs.

SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel-sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus: *mo′-re, vi′-ce, a-cu′-te, per-sua′-de.*

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long, short, or common.[1]

21. **Long.** — A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec.*

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons.*

22. **Short.** — A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dĭ′-es, vĭ′-ae, nĭ′-hil.*[2]

23. **Common.** — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally[3] short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *ă′-gri.*

24. The signs ¯, ˘, ˣ, denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ă̄-grŏ̆-rŭm.*[4]

---

[1] Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

[2] No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

[3] A vowel is said to be *naturally* short when it is short in its own *nature;* i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

[4] By referring to 14, it will be seen, that, in the Continental Method, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (26). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus, in *rēx, ūrbs, ārs, sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity;

ACCENTUATION.

I. Primary Accent.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons*, *nos*.

26. Other words are accented as follows:[1]

1. *Words of two syllables* — always on the first: *men'-sa*.

2. *Words of more than two syllables* — on the *penult*[2] if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:[2] *ho-nō'-ris*, *con'-sŭ-lis*.

II. Secondary Accents.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent, — on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity; otherwise on the third: *mon'-u-e'-runt*, *mon'-u-e-ra'-mus*, *in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt*.

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cen-tis'-sĭ-mus*.

Exercise IV.

Accent and pronounce the following Words.

1. Cŏrōnă,[3] cŏrōnae, cŏrōnārŭm.[4] 2. Gemmae,[5] gemmăm, gemmārŭm. 3. Săpientiae,[6] ămīcĭtiae, justĭtiae, glōriae.[7]

---

but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *ăvĕ*, *măr̆ĕ*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 26), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7–12).

[1] In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

[2] Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

[3] 26, 2; 7, 3, 1). [5] 11, 1; 26, 1. [7] 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

[4] 26, 2; 27. [6] 27; 8, 3, 1); 12.

4. Săpientiăm, ămīcĭtiăm, justĭtiăm, glōriăm. 5. Săpientiă, ămīcĭtiă, justĭtiă, glōriă.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

---

29. Etymology treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech[1] are — *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

31. A Noun, or Substantive, is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicĕro*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dŏmus*, house.

1. A **Proper Noun** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicĕro*, *Rōma*.

2. A **Common Noun** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *ĕquus*, horse.

32. Nouns have *Gender*, *Number*, *Person*, *and Case*.

GENDER.

33. There are three genders,[2] — *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

---

[1] Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

[2] In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males;* feminine nouns, *females;* and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

35. General Rules for Gender.

I. Masculines.

1. Names of *Males: Cicĕro; vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months: Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

II. Feminine.

1. Names of *Females: mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees: Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pĭrus*, pear-tree.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:[1]

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with *of.*
Dative,	Objective with *to* or *for.*
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with.*

---

of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females;* while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

[1] The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book.* Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor.*

1. **Oblique Cases.** — In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (casus recti, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (casus oblīqui).

2. **Case-Endings.** — In form, the several cases are, in general, distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings:* Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases alike.** — But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*, *in neuters*, are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.** — In Latin, there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

Genitive Endings.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	**ī,**	**ĭs,**	**ūs,**	**eī.**[1]

41. **Stem and Endings.** — In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem[2] may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

---

[1] See 119, 1.

[2] The *stem* is the basis of the word, or the part to which the several endings are added to form the various cases. Thus in the forms, *mensă, mensae, mensăm, mensīs,* &c., given under 42, it will be observed that *mens* remains unchanged; and that, by the addition of the endings, *a, ae, am, is,* &c., to it, the several cases are formed. Here *mens* is the *stem;* and *a, ae, am, is,* &c., are the *case-endings.*

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and **ĕ**, — *feminine;* **ās** and **ēs**, — *masculine.*[1]

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	mensă,	*a table,*	ă
Gen.	mens**ae**,	*of a table,*	ae
Dat.	mens**ae**,	*to, for, a table,*	ae
Acc.	mens**ăm**,	*a table,*	ăm
Voc.	mensă,	*O table,*	ă
Abl.	mensā,	*with, from, by, a table,*	ā
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	mens**ae**,	*tables,*	ae
Gen.	mens**ārŭm**,	*of tables,*	ārŭm
Dat.	mens**īs**,	*to, for, tables,*	īs
Acc.	mens**ās**,	*tables,*	ās
Voc.	mens**ae**,	*O tables,*	ae
Abl	mens**īs**,	*with, from, by, tables,*	īs.

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — With these endings decline:

Ala, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victōria*, victory.

Exercise V.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amīcĭtiă,	ae,[2] *f.*[3]	*friendship.*
Cŏrōnă,	ae, *f.*	*crown.*

[1] That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

[2] The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia;* Gen., *amicitiae.*

[3] Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter.*

Gemmă	ae, *f.*	*gem.*
Glōriă,	ae, *f.*	*glory.*
Hōră,	ae, *f.*	*hour.*
Justĭtiă,	ae, *f.*	*justice.*
Săpientiă,	ae, *f.*	*wisdom.*
Schŏlă,	ae, *f.*	*school.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Corōnă,[1] corōnā, corōnae,[2] corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmă, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sapientiă, amicitiă, justitiă, gloriă. 4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam. 5. Sapientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of[3] friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a[4] crown, of a gem. 11. Crowns, gems. 12. With the[4] crowns, with the gems. 13. Of crowns, of gems.

---

[1] As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an;* as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the;* as, *corōna*, the crown.

[2] When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

[3] The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of, to, by,* may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship,* amicitia; *of friendship,* amicitiae.

[4] The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a, an,* and *the,* are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown, a crown,* and *the crown,* are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

ĕr, ĭr, ŭs, os, — *masculine*; ŭm, on, — *neuter*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er*, *ir*, *us*, *um*, and are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave*. Puer, *boy*. Ager, *field*. Templum, *temple*.

	SINGULAR.			
N.	servŭs	puĕr	ăgĕr	templŭm
G.	servī	puĕrī	ăgrī	templī
D.	servō	puĕrō	ăgrō	templō
A.	servŭm	puĕrŭm	ăgrŭm	templŭm
V.	servĕ	puĕr	ăgĕr	templŭm
A.	servō	puĕrō	ăgrō	templō
	PLURAL.			
N.	servī	puĕrī	ăgrī	templă
G.	servōrŭm	puĕrōrŭm	ăgrōrŭm	templōrŭm
D.	servīs	puĕrīs	ăgrīs	templīs
A.	servōs	puĕrōs	ăgrōs	templă
V.	servī	puĕrī	ăgrī	templă
A.	servīs.	puĕrīs.	ăgrīs.	templīs.

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen that they are declined with the following

Case-endings.

1. ŭs.	2. ĕr.	3. ŭm.
	SINGULAR.	
N. ŭs	—[1]	ŭm
G. ī	ī	ī
D. ō	ō	ō
A. ŭm	ŭm	ŭm
V. ĕ	—[1]	ŭm
A. ō	ō	ō

[1] The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*: thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puĕrŭs*.

	PLURAL.		
N. ī	ī	ă
G. ōrŭm	ōrŭm	ōrŭm
D. īs	īs	īs
A. ōs	ōs	ă
V. ī	ī	ă
A. īs.	īs.	īs.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — Like SERVUS: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master. — Like PUER: *gĕner*, son-in-law; *sŏcer*, father-in-law. — Like AGER: *făber*, artisan; *magister*, master. — Like TEMPLUM: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. **Paradigms.** — Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.: Nom. *puer* for *puĕrus*, Voc. *puer* for *puĕre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38, 3.

Exercise VI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dōnŭm, ī, *n.*	*gift.*
Gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, *m.*	*son-in-law.*
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrī, *m.*	*book.*
Ocŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*eye.*
Praeceptŭm, ī, *n.*	*rule, precept.*
Sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, *m.*	*father-in-law.*
Tȳrannŭs, ī, *m.*	*tyrant.*
Verbŭm, ī, *n.*	*word.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Ocŭlus, ocŭli, ocŭlo, ocŭlum, ocŭle, oculōrum, ocŭlis, ocŭlos. 2. Socer, socĕri, socĕro, socĕrum, socerōrum, socĕris, socĕros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Puĕri, genĕri. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Puĕrum, genĕrum. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Templa, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Genĕri, generōrum. 13. Agri, agrō-

rum. 14. Dono, donis. 15. Verbum, praeceptum. 16. Verbi, praecepti.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves. 3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts. 11. The tyrant, the boy, the book, the precept. 12. Of the tyrant, of the boy, of the book, of the precept.

SECOND DECLENSION — Continued.

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE: [1]

Cluilius rex mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Urbes Carthāgo atque Nŭmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

I. Directions for Parsing.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline [2] it.
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,[3] and the Rule for it.

---

[1] A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive;* as, *Cluilius rex,* Cluilius the king. Here *rex,* the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius, — *Cluilius the king.* The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

[2] Adjectives in the Comparative or in the Superlative degree (160) should also be compared (162).

[3] By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regīna,* under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia.*

MODEL.

Artĕmīsiă rēgīnă, *Artemisia the queen.*

Regīna is a noun (31) of the First Declension (42), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *regīn* (41). Singular: *regīna, regīnae, regīnae, regīnam, regīnă, regīnā.* Plural: *regīnae, reginārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis.* It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 35, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in *case*, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

EXERCISE VII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cāiŭs, ī, *m.*	*Caius*, a proper name.
Fīliă, ae, *f.*	*daughter.*
Hastă, ae, *f.*	*spear.*
Pīsistrătŭs, ī, *m.*	*Pisistratus*, Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmŭs, ī, *m.*	*branch.*
Rēgīnă, ae, *f.*	*queen.*
Tulliă, ae, *f.*	*Tullia*, a proper name.
Victōria, ae, *f.*	*Victoria*, Queen of England.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Ramus, hastă. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae. 4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum. 7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum. 10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis. 12. Templum, templa. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistrătus tyrannus.[1] 15. Pisistrăti tyranni. 16. Pisistrăto tyranno. 17. Tulliă filiă. 18. Tulliae filiae. 19. Tulliam filiam.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.

[1] *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrătus*, according to Rule II. 363.

3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns. 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books. 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave.[1] 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave. 14. Victoria the queen. 15. For Victoria the queen. 16. Of Victoria the queen.

THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

I. Masculine Endings:[2]

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

II. Feminine Endings:

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive;* s *preceded by a consonant.*

III. Neuter Endings:

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the Nominative Singular. These all end in *e*, *s*, or *x*.

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the Nominative Singular.

In Class II., the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. consŭlis; stem, *consul*, a consul: *leo*, leōnis; stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), lion: *carmen*, carmĭnis; stem, *carmin* (Nom. changes ĭn to en), song.

[1] See Rule II. 363.

[2] That is, nouns with these endings are masculine.

50. Class I. — With Nominative Ending.

I. Nouns in **es, is, s** *impure*,[1] and **x**: — *with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Nubes, *f.* *cloud.*	Avis, *f.* *bird.*	Urbs, *f.* *city.*	Rex, *m.* *king.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. nūbēs	ăvĭs	urbs	rex[2]
G. nubĭs	avĭs	urbĭs	rēgĭs
D. nubī	avī	urbī	regī
A. nubĕm	avĕm	urbĕm	regĕm
V. nubēs	avĭs	urbs	rex
A. nubĕ	avĕ	urbĕ	regĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
G. nubĭŭm	avĭŭm	urbĭŭm	regŭm
D. nubĭbŭs	avĭbŭs	urbĭbŭs	regĭbŭs
A. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
V. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
A. nubĭbŭs.	avĭbŭs.	urbĭbŭs.	regĭbŭs.

II. Nouns in **es, is, s** *impure*, and **x**: — *with stem changed in Nominative.*

Miles, *m.* *soldier.*	Lapis, *m.* *stone.*	Ars, *f.* *art.*	Judex, *m.* and *f.* *judge.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. mīlĕs	lăpĭs	ars	jūdex[2]
G. milĭtĭs	lapĭdĭs	artĭs	judĭcĭs
D. milĭtī	lapĭdī	artī	judĭcī
A. milĭtĕm	lapĭdĕm	artĕm	judĭcĕm
V. milĕs	lapĭs	ars	judex
A. milĭtĕ	lapĭdĕ	artĕ	judĭcĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. milĭtēs	lapĭdēs	artēs	judĭcēs
G. milĭtăm	lapĭdŭm	artĭŭm	judĭcŭm

[1] *Impure;* i.e., preceded by a consonant.

[2] X in rex = *gs; g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending: but in judex, x = *cs; c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

D. militĭbŭs	lapidĭbŭs	artĭbŭs	judicĭbŭs
A. militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
V. militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
A. militĭbŭs.	lapidĭbŭs.	artĭbŭs.	judicĭbŭs.

III. Nouns in **as**, **os**, **us**, and **e**: — *those in* as, os, *and* us *with stem changed, those in* e *with stem unchanged.*

Civĭtas, *f.*	Nepos, *m.*	Virtus, *f.*	Mare, *n.*
state.	*grandson.*	*virtue.*	*sea.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. cīvĭtās	nĕpōs	virtūs	mărĕ
G. civitātĭs	nepōtĭs	virtūtĭs	marĭs
D. civitātī	nepōtī	virtūtī	marī
A. civitātĕm	nepōtĕm	virtūtĕm	marĕ
V. civĭtās	nepōs	virtūs	marĕ
A. civitātĕ	nepōtĕ	virtūtĕ	marī [2]
	PLURAL.		
N. civĭtātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marĭă
G. civĭtātŭm [1]	nepōtŭm	virtūtŭm	marĭŭm
D. civitatĭbŭs	nepotĭbŭs	virtutĭbŭs	marĭbŭs
A. civitātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marĭă
V. civitātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marĭă
A. civitatĭbŭs.	nepotĭbŭs.	virtutĭbŭs.	marĭbŭs.

51. Class II. — Without Nominative Ending.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**: — *with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Sol, *m.*	Consul, *m.*	Passer, *m.*	Vultur, *m.*
sun.	*consul.*	*sparrow.*	*vulture.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. sōl	consŭl	passĕr	vultŭr
G. sōlĭs	consŭlĭs	passĕrĭs	vultŭrĭs
D. sōlī	consŭlī	passĕrī	vultŭrī
A. sōlĕm	consŭlĕm	passĕrĕm	vultŭrĕm
V. sōl	consŭl	passĕr	vultŭr
A. sōlĕ	consŭlĕ	passĕrĕ	vultŭrĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. sōlēs	consŭlēs	passĕrēs	vultŭrēs
G.	consŭlŭm	passĕrŭm	vultŭrŭm
D. sōlĭbŭs	consulĭbŭs	passerĭbŭs	vulturĭbŭs

[1] Sometimes *civitatiŭm*. [2] Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

A. sōlē**s**	consŭlē**s**	passĕrē**s**	vultŭrē**s**
V. sōlē**s**	consŭlē**s**	passĕrē**s**	vultŭrē**s**
A. sōlĭ**bŭs.**	consulĭ**bŭs.**	passerĭ**bŭs.**	vulturĭ**bŭs.**

II. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Leo, *m.* *lion.*	Virgo, *f.* *maiden.*	Pater, *m.* *father.*	Pastor, *m.* *shepherd.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. leo	virgo	pătĕr	pastŏr
G. leōnĭ**s**	virgĭnĭ**s**	pătrĭ**s**	pastōrĭ**s**
D. leōnī	virgĭnī	patrī	pastōrī
A. leōnĕ**m**	virgĭnĕ**m**	patrĕ**m**	pastōrĕ**m**
V. leo	virgo	patĕr	pastŏr
A. leōnĕ	virgĭnĕ	patrĕ	pastōrĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. leōnē**s**	virgĭnē**s**	patrē**s**	pastōrē**s**
G. leōnŭ**m**	virgĭnŭ**m**	patrŭ**m**	pastōrŭ**m**
D. leonĭ**bŭs**	virgĭnĭ**bŭs**	patrĭ**bŭs**	pastorĭ**bŭs**
A. leōnē**s**	virgĭnē**s**	patrē**s**	pastōrē**s**
V. leōnē**s**	virgĭnē**s**	patrē**s**	pastōrē**s**
A. leonĭ**bŭs.**	virginĭ**bŭs.**	patrĭ**bŭs.**	pastorĭ**bŭs.**

III. Nouns in **en, us,** and **ut**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Carmen, *n.* *song.*	Opus, *n.* *work.*	Corpus, *n.* *body.*	Capŭt, *n.* *head.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. carmĕn	ŏpŭs	corpŭs	căpŭt
G. carmĭnĭ**s**	opĕrĭ**s**	corpŏrĭ**s**	capĭtĭ**s**
D. carmĭnī	opĕrī	corpŏrī	capĭtī
A. carmĕn	opŭs	corpŭs	capŭt
V. carmĕn	opŭs	corpŭs	capŭt
A. carmĭnĕ	opĕrĕ	corpŏrĕ	capĭtĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. carmĭnă	opĕră	corpŏră	capĭtă
G. carmĭnŭ**m**	opĕrŭ**m**	corpŏrŭ**m**	capĭtŭ**m**
D. carminĭ**bŭs**	operĭ**bŭs**	corporĭ**bŭs**	capitĭ**bŭs**
A. carmĭnă	opĕră	corpŏră	capĭtă
V. carmĭnă	opĕră	corpŏră	capĭtă
A. carminĭ**bŭs.**	operĭ**bŭs.**	corporĭ**bŭs.**	capitĭ**bŭs.**

52. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

	SINGULAR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	s[1] (es, is) ——[2]	ĕ ——[2]
Gen.	ĭs	ĭs
Dat.	ī	ī
Acc.	ĕm (ĭm)[3]	like Nom.
Voc.	like Nom.	" "
Abl.	ĕ, ī	ĕ, ī
	PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	ēs	ă, ĭă
Gen.	ŭm, iŭm	ŭm, iŭm
Dat.	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
Acc.	ēs	ă, ĭă
Voc.	ēs	ă, ĭă
Abl.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

53. **Declension.** — To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the Nominative Singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

---

[1] In nouns in *x* (= cs or gs), *s* is the case-ending, and the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem.

[2] The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

[3] The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

54. Examples for Practice:

Class I.

Rūpes,	*Gen.* rupis, f.	*rock;*	hospes,	*Gen.* hospĭtis, m.	*guest.*
vestis,	vestis, f.	*garment;*	cuspis,	cuspĭdis, f.	*spear.*
trabs,	trăbis, f.	*beam;*	mons,	montis, m.	*mountain.*
lex,	lēgis, f.	*law;*	ăpex,	apĭcis, m.	*summit.*
libertas,	libertātis, f.	*liberty;*	sălus,	salūtis, f.	*safety.*
sedīle,	sedīlis, n.	*seat;*			

Class II.

Exsul,	*Gen.* exsŭlis, m. and f.	*exile;*	dŏlor,	*Gen.* dolōris, m.	*pain.*
actio,	actiōnis, f.	*action;*	imāgo,	imagĭnis, f.	*image.*
anser,	ansĕris, m.	*goose;*	frāter,	fratris, m.	*brother.*
nōmen,	nomĭnis, n.	*name;*	tempus,	tempŏris, n.	*time.*

RULE XVI. — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:[1]

Cătōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hămilcăris, *the death of Hamilcar.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cătōnĭs ōrātiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

Catōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (31, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class II., as it has no Nominative Ending (49, II. and 51, II.): stem, *Catōn* (41); Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped, 49, II.). Singu-

[1] The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of another noun: *Cluilius rex,* Cluilius the king; *Catōnis oratiōnes,* Cato's orations, *or* the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of Cluilius by showing *what* Cluilius is meant, — *Cluilius the king.* In a similar manner, the Genitive *Catōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *oratiōnes* by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato.* Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or

lar:[1] *Cato, Catōnis, Catōni, Catōnem, Cato, Catōne.* It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 35, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *orātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS I.[2]

EXERCISE VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cīvīs, cīvīs, *m.* and *f.*	*citizen.*
Lex, lēgĭs, *f.*	*law.*
Mors, mortĭs, *f.*	*death.*
Pax, pācĭs, *f.*	*peace.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves. 4. Avi, avĭbus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbĭbus. 7. Rex, reges. 8. Regis, regum. 9. Nubēs, milĕs. 10. Nubis, militis. 11. Nubem, militem. 12. Rex, judex. 13. Regis, judĭcis. 14. Reges, judĭces. 15. Civĭtas, civitātes. 16. Virtus, virtūtes. 17. Mors regis.[3] 18. Morte regis. 19. Mortes regum. 20. Virtus judĭcis. 21. Pacis gloriā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Kings, laws.

---

thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *orationes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

[1] As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

[2] This exercise furnishes practice in the declension of nouns belonging to Class I. of the Third Declension. See 50.

[3] *Regis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *mors*, according to Rule XVI. 395.

5. Of the king, of the law. 6. Of the kings, of the laws.
7. To the king, to the law. 8. To the kings, to the laws.
9. The law of the state.[1] 10. The laws of the state.

THIRD DECLENSION — Continued. — Class II.

Prepositions.

RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.[2]

Ad ămīcum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In Ităliā,[3] *in Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad ămīcŭm, *To a friend.*

Amīcum is a noun (31) of the Second Declension (45), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *amīc* (41). Singular: *amīcus, amīci, amīco, amīcum, amīce, amīco.* Plural: *amīci, amicōrum, amīcis, amīcos, amīci, amīcis.* It is of the Masculine gender by 45, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad.*

---

[1] The Latin word for *of the state* will be in the Genitive, according to Rule XVI. 395.

[2] The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse,* to be in Italy; *ante me,* before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable at this early stage of the course to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

[3] Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in;* though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the *Accusative* when it means *into,* and with the Ablative when it means *in.*

Exercise IX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ad, *prep. with acc.*	*to, towards.*
Cĭcĕrŏ, Cĭcĕrōnĭs, *m.*	*Cicero*, the Roman orator.
Consŭl, consŭlĭs, *m.*	*consul.*[1]
Contrā, *prep. with acc.*	*against, contrary to.*
Exsŭl, exsŭlĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*exile.*
Frāter, frātrĭs, *m.*	*brother.*
Nōmĕn, nōmĭnĭs, *n.*	*name.*
Orātĭŏ, ōrātiōnĭs, *f.*	*oration, speech.*
Orātŏr, ōrātōrĭs, *m.*	*orator.*
Victŏr, victōrĭs, *m.*	*victor, conqueror.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 2. Virgo, virgĭnis, virgĭnes. 3. Solis, solem, soles. 4. Consŭlis, consŭlem, consŭles. 5. Solĭbus, consulĭbus. 6. Passĕris, vultŭris. 7. Passĕrum, vultŭrum. 8. Patri, pastōri. 9. Patres, pastōres. 10. Carmen, carmĭna. 11. Caput, capĭta. 12. Opĕris, corpŏris. 13. Cicerōnis[2] oratio. 14. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 15. Oratiōne consŭlis. 16. Ad gloriam.[3] 17. Contra regem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs,

---

[1] The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

[2] See Rule XVI. 395, and Model.

[3] The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To[1] the father, to the brother. 13. Contrary to the law.[2] 14. Contrary to the laws of the state.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us, — *masculine;* **u**, — *neuter.*

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, *fruit.*	Cornu, *horn.*	Case-Endings.	
	SINGULAR.		
N. fructŭs	cornū	ŭs	ū
G. fructūs	cornūs	ūs	ūs
D. fructuī	cornū	uī	ū
A. fructŭm	cornū	ŭm	ū
V. fructŭs	cornū	ŭs	ū
A. fructū	cornū	ū	ū
	PLURAL.		
N. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
G. fructuŭm	cornuŭm	uŭm	uŭm
D. fructĭbŭs	cornĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ūbŭs)	ĭbŭs (ūbŭs)
A. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
V. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
A. fructĭbŭs.	cornĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs (ūbŭs).	ĭbŭs (ūbŭs).

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus* song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *gĕnu*, knee.

---

[1] *To* should still be regarded as a sign of the Dative, though it may sometimes be rendered by the preposition *ad.*

[2] See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

Exercise X.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adventŭs, ūs, *m.*	*arrival, approach.*
Antĕ, *prep. with acc.*	*before.*
Caesăr, Caesărĭs, *m.*	*Caesar*, a Roman surname.
Cantŭs, ūs, *m.*	*singing, song.*
Conspectŭs, ūs, *m.*	*sight, presence.*
Exercĭtŭs, ūs, *m.*	*army.*
Hostĭs, hostĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*enemy.*
Impĕtŭs, ūs, *m.*	*attack.*
In, *prep.*	*into* with acc., *in* with abl.
Luscĭnĭă, ae, *f.*	*nightingale.*
Occāsŭs, ūs, *m.*	*the setting*, as of the sun.
Post, *prep. with acc.*	*after.*
Ver, vērĭs, *n.*	*spring.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructĭbus, cantĭbus. 3. Cantus lusciniae.[1] 4. Cantu lusciniae. 5. Cantĭbus luscĭnĭārum. 6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum[2] veris.[1] 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesăris adventu. 11. Ante adventum Caesăris. 12. Impĕtus hostium. 13. Impĕtu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercĭtus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After[3]

[1] Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 22.

[2] Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 24.

[3] See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 24. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to, for, with, from, by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with, from, by*. Other English prepositions, *before, after, behind, between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the nightingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**, — *feminine*, and are declined as follows:

Dies, *day*.[1]	Res, *thing*.	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ēī**	r**ĕī**	eī
D. di**ēī**	r**ĕī**	eī
A. di**ĕm**	r**ĕm**	ĕm
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ē**	r**ē**	ē
	PLURAL.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ērŭm**	r**ērŭm**	ērŭm
D. di**ēbŭs**	r**ēbŭs**	ēbŭs
A. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ēbŭs.**	r**ēbŭs.**	ēbŭs.

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

E in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice.**[2]—*Acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

---

[1] *Dies*, day, is an exception in Gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

[2] Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want, in the Plural, the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. These cases must, therefore, be omitted in declining these examples.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.[1]

SINGULAR.

	Dec. I.	Dec II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		D. V.
	Fem.	Masc.,	Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	ă	ŭs — [2]	ŭm	s (es, is) [3] —	ĕ —	ŭs	ū	ēs
G.	ae	ī	ī	ĭs	ĭs	ūs	ūs	ēī
D.	ae	ō	ō	ī	ī	uī	ū	ēī
A.	ăm	ŭm	ŭm	ĕm (īm)	like nom.	ŭm	ū	ĕm
V.	ă	ĕ —	ŭm	like nom.	like nom.	ŭs	ū	ēs
A.	ā	ō	ō	ĕ (ī)	ĕ (ī)	ū	ū	ē

PLURAL.

N.	ae	ī	ă	ēs	ă (ĭă)	ūs	uă	ēs
G.	ārŭm	ōrŭm	ōrŭm	ŭm (ĭŭm)	ŭm (ĭŭm)	uŭm	uŭm	ērŭm
D.	īs	īs	īs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ēbŭs
A.	ās	ōs	ă	ēs	ă (ĭă)	ūs	uă	ēs
V.	ae	ī	ă	ēs	ă (ĭă)	ūs	uă	ēs
A.	īs.	īs	īs.	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).	ēbŭs

Exercise XI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aciēs, ăciēī, *f.*	*battle-array, army.*
Amīcŭs, ī, *m.*	*friend.*
Cibŭs, ī, *m.*	*food.*
Dē, *prep. with abl.*	*concerning.*
Diēs, diēī, *m.* and *f.*	*day.*
Făciēs, făciēī, *f.*	*face, appearance.*
Nŭmĕrŭs, ī, *m.*	*number, quantity.*
Rēs, rēī, *f.*	*thing, affair.*
Spĕciēs, spĕciēī, *f.*	*appearance.*
Spēs, spēī, *f.*	*hope.*
Victōriă, ae, *f.*	*victory.*

---

[1] This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

[2] The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Dec. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45, 1).

[3] The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Diēi, diērum, diēbus. 2. Aciēi, aciem, acie. 3. Diem, speciem. 4. Die, specie. 5. Res, spes. 6. Rei, spei. 7. Victoriae spes. 8. Victoriae spe. 9. Diēi horae. 10. Numĕrus diērum. 11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies. 12. Gloriae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi. 13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bŏnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.	Fem., Dec. I.	Neut., Dec. II.
us —[1],	a,	um.

They are declined as follows:

Bŏnus, *good.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏnŭs	bŏnă	bŏnŭm
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonŭm	bonăm	bonŭm
Voc.	bonĕ	bonă	bonŭm
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō;

PLURAL.

Nom.	bonī	bonae	bonă
Gen.	bonōrŭm	bonārŭm	bonōrŭm
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bonă
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bonă
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs.

Līber, *free.*

SINGULAR.

Nom.	lĭbĕr	lībĕră	lībĕrŭm
Gen.	lĭbĕrī	lībĕrae	lĭbĕrī
Dat.	lĭbĕrō	lībĕrae	lĭbĕrō
Acc.	lĭbĕrŭm	lībĕrăm	lĭbĕrŭm
Voc.	lĭbĕr	lībĕră	lĭbĕrŭm
Abl.	lĭbĕrō	lībĕrā	lĭbĕrō;

PLURAL

Nom.	lĭbĕrī	lībĕrae	lībĕră
Gen.	liberōrŭm	liberārŭm	liberōrŭm
Dat.	lĭbĕrīs	lĭbĕrīs	lĭbĕrīs
Acc.	lĭbĕrōs	lĭbĕrās	lĭbĕră
Voc.	lĭbĕrī	lībĕrae	lībĕră
Abl.	lĭbĕrīs	lĭbĕrīs	lĭbĕrīs.

[1] The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45, 1.

Aeger, *sick.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	aegĕr	aegrā	aegrŭm
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Acc.	aegrŭm	aegrām	aegrŭm
Voc.	aeger	aegrā	aegrŭm
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō ;

PLURAL.

Nom.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrā
Gen.	aegrōrŭm	aegrārŭm	aegrōrŭm
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegrā
Voc.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrā
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs.

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Dec. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Dec. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Dec. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45, 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45, 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger.*

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.*[1] Cic. Vērae āmīcĭtiae, *true friendships.* Cic. Māgister optĭmus, *the best teacher.* Cic.

---

[1] Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna.* It is declined like BONUS: *caecus, caeca, caecum.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Vērae ămīcĭtiae, *True friendships.*

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147) : STEM, *ver* (41, 148, 1). Singular : N. *verus, veră, verum ;* G. *veri, verae, veri ;* D. *vero, verae, vero ;* A. *verum, veram, verum ;* V. *vere, veră, verum ;* A. *vero, verā, vero.* Plural : N. *veri, verae, vera ;* G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum ;* D. *veris, veris, veris ;* A. *veros, veras, vera ;* V. *veri, verae, vera ;* A. *veris, veris, veris.* It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII : "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

Exercise XII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*ring.*
Aureŭs, ă, ŭm,[1]	*golden.*
Beātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*happy, blessed.*
Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*good.*
Egrĕgiŭs, ă, ŭm,	*distinguished.*
Fīdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*faithful.*
Grātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*acceptable, pleasing.*
Magnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*great.*
Multŭs, ă, ŭm,	*much, many.*
Puellă, ae, *f.*	*girl.*
Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm,	*beautiful.*
Rēgīnă, ae, *f.*	*queen.*
Rēgnŭm, ī, *n.*	*kingdom.*
Vērŭs, ă, ŭm,	*true.*
Vītă, ae, *f.*	*life.*

[1] The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcus fidus.[1] 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amīcos fidos. 9. Corōnă aureă. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnā aureā. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellă pulchră. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beātă vitā. 29. Aureus annŭlus. 30. Aurei annŭli. 31. Magnă gloriă. 32. Egregiă victoriă.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true[2] friend. 2. The true[2] friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

---

[1] In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amīcus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

[2] Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, — one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms, — the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, — the same for all genders.

151. I. Adjectives of Three Endings of this declension have in the nominative singular:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
er,	is,	e.

They are declined as follows:

Acer, *sharp.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ
G.	acrĭs	acrĭs	acrĭs
D.	acrī	acrī	acrī
A.	acrĕm	acrĕm	acrĕ
V.	acĕr	acrĭs	acrĕ
A.	acrī	acrī	acrī;

PLURAL.

N.	acrēs	acrēs	acrĭă
G.	acrĭŭm	acrĭŭm	acrĭŭm
D.	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs
A.	acrēs	acrēs	acrĭă
V.	acrēs	acrēs	acrĭă
A.	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs.

152. II. Adjectives of Two Endings have in the nominative singular:

	M. and F.	Neut.	
1.	**is**	**e**,	for positives.
2.	**ior** (**or**)	**ius** (**us**),	for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, *sad.* Tristior, *more sad.*[1]

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. tristĭs	tristĕ	*N.* tristiŏr	tristiŭs
G. tristĭs	tristĭs	*G.* tristiōrĭs	tristiōrĭs
D. tristī	tristī	*D.* tristiōrī	tristiōrī
A. tristĕm	tristĕ	*A.* tristiōrĕm	tristiŭs
V. tristĭs	tristĕ	*V.* tristiŏr	tristiŭs
A. tristī	tristī;	*A.* tristiōrĕ (ī)	tristiōrĕ (ī);

PLURAL.

N. tristēs	tristiă	*N.* tristiōrēs	tristiōră
G. tristiŭm	tristiŭm	*G.* tristiōrŭm	tristiōrŭm
D. tristĭbŭs	tristĭbŭs	*D.* tristiōrĭbŭs	tristiōrĭbŭs
A. tristēs	tristiă	*A.* tristiōrēs	tristiōră
V. tristēs	tristiă	*V.* tristiōrēs	tristiōră
A. tristĭbŭs	tristĭbŭs.	*A.* tristiōrĭbŭs	tristiōrĭbŭs.

153. III. Adjectives of One Ending. — All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Fēlix, *happy.* Prūdens, *prudent.*

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. fēlix	fēlix	*N.* prūdens	prūdens
G. felīcĭs	felīcĭs	*G.* prudentĭs	prudentĭs
D. felīcī	felīcī	*D.* prudentī	prudentī
A. felīcĕm	felix	*A.* prudentĕm	prudens
V. felix	felix	*V.* prudens	prudens
A. felīcĕ (ī)	felīcĕ (ī);	*A.* prudentĕ (ī)	prudentĕ (ī);

[1] Comparative. See 160.

PLURAL.

N. felīcēs	felīciă	*N.* prudentēs	prudentiă
G. felīciŭm	felīciŭm	*G.* prudentiŭm	prudentiŭm
D. felīcĭbŭs	felīcĭbŭs	*D.* prudentĭbŭs	prudentĭbŭs
A. felīcēs	felīciă	*A.* prudentēs	prudentiă
V. felīcēs	felīciă	*V* prudentēs	prudentiă
A. felīcĭbŭs	felīcĭbŭs.	*A.* prudentĭbŭs	prudentĭbŭs.

Exercise XIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Acĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ,	*sharp, severe.*
Anĭmăl, ănĭmālĭs, *n.*	*animal.*
Brĕvĭs, ĕ,	*short, brief.*
Crūdēlĭs, ĕ,	*cruel.*
Dŏlŏr, dŏlōrĭs, *m.*	*pain, grief.*
Dux, dŭcĭs, *m.*	*leader.*
Fertĭlĭs, ĕ,	*fertile.*
Fortĭs, ĕ,	*brave.*
Năvālĭs, ĕ,	*naval.*
Omnĭs, ĕ,	*every, all, whole.*
Pugnă, ae, *f.*	*battle.*
Săpiens, săpientĭs,	*wise.*
Singŭlārĭs, ĕ,	*singular, remarkable.*
Utĭlĭs, ĕ,	*useful.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolōres acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legĭbus acrĭbus. 5. Hostis crudēlis. 6. Hostem crudēlem. 7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus milĭtis[1] fortis. 9. Virtūte milĭtum[1] fortium. 10. Ager fertĭlis. 11. In agro fertĭli. 12. Agros fertĭles. 13. In agris fertilĭbus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navāles. 16. Post pugnas navāles. 17. Singulāris virtus. 18. Singulāri virtūte. 19. Omne anĭmal. 20. Omnia animalia.

[1] Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissĭmus*,[1] high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most: doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, *or* too learned; *doctissĭmus*, most learned, *or* very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison* — by endings.
II. *Adverbial Comparison* — by adverbs.

I. Terminational Comparison.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
iŏr,	iŏr,	iŭs.	issĭmŭs,	issĭmă,	issĭmŭm.

[1] Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissĭmus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus, a, um; alti, ae, i*, etc.; *altissĭmus, a, um; altissĭmi, ae, i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 152: *altior, altius; altiōris*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Altus, altior, altissĭmus: *high, higher, highest.*
lēvis, levior, levissĭmus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *măgis*, more, and *maxĭme*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, măgis arduus, maxĭme arduus.
Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātŏr clārĭŏr, *A more renowned orator.*

Clarĭor is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*, which is of the First and Second Declensions (148). Positive, *clārus;* STEM, *clār;* Comparative, *clarior;* Superlative, *clarissĭmus. Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (152). Singular: N. *clarior, clarius;* G. *clarĭōris, clarĭōris*, etc.[1] It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.[2]

EXERCISE XIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Altŭs, ă, ŭm,	*high, lofty.*
Clārŭs, ă, ŭm,	*distinguished, renowned.*
Intĕr, *prep. with acc.*	*among, in the midst of.*
Mons, montĭs, *m.*	*mountain.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clarus. 2. Orātor clarior.[3] 3. Orātor clarissĭmus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clarĭōres.[3] 6. Ora-

[1] Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

[2] Give the Rule.

[3] Declined like *tristior*, 152. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

tōres clarissĭmi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beatissĭma vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissĭmum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissĭma. 16. Milĭtes fortissĭmi. 17. Liber utĭlis. 18. Libri utĭliōres. 19. Libris utilissĭmis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

I. Numeral Adjectives.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. Cardinal Numbers:[1] *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.

2. Ordinal Numbers:[1] *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.

3. Distributives:[1] *singŭli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

174. Table of Numeral Adjectives.

Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.
1. ūnŭs, ună, unŭm,	prīmŭs, *first*,	singŭli, *one by one.*
2. duŏ, duae, duŏ,	sĕcundŭs, *second*,	bīnī, *two by two.*
3. trēs, triă,	tertiŭs, *third*,	ternī (trīnī).
4. quattuŏr,	quartŭs, *fourth*,	quăternī.
5. quinquĕ,	quintŭs, *fifth*,	quīnī.
6. sex,	sextŭs,	sēnī.

1 *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series: prīmus*, first; *secundus*,

7.	septĕm,	septīmŭs,	septēnī.
8.	octŏ,	octāvŭs,	octōnī.
9.	nŏvĕm,	nōnŭs,	nŏvēnī.
10.	dĕcĕm,	dĕcĭmŭs,[a]	dēnī.
11.	undĕcīm,	undĕcĭmŭs,	undēnī.
12.	duŏdĕcīm,	duŏdĕcĭmŭs,	duŏdēnī.
13.	trĕdĕcīm, *or* dĕcĕm ĕt trēs,	tertiŭs dĕcīmŭs,	ternī dēnī.
20.	vīgintī,	vīcēsĭmŭs,	vīcēnī.
21.	vīgintī ūnŭs, / ūnŭs ĕt vīgintī,	vīcēsĭmŭs prīmŭs, / ūnŭs ĕt vīcēsĭmŭs,	vīcēnī singŭlī. / singŭlī ĕt vīcēnī.
30.	trīgintā,	trīcēsĭmŭs,	trīcēnī.
40.	quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsĭmŭs,	quadrāgēnī.
50.	quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsĭmŭs,	quinquāgēnī.
100.	centŭm,	centēsĭmŭs,	centēnī.
200.	dŭcentī, ae, ă,	dŭcentēsĭmŭs,	dŭcēnī.
1000.	millĕ,	millēsĭmŭs,	singŭlă milliă.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. *Cardinals.*

175. On the declension of cardinals, observe,

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.

2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum*, are in declinable.

3. That the hundreds are declined.[1]

4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.[2]

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

1. Unus, *one.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	ūnŭs,	ūnă,	ūnŭm,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūnă,
G.	unīŭs,	unīŭs,	unīŭs,	unōrŭm,	unārŭm,	unōrŭm,
D.	unī,	unī,	unī,	unīs,	unīs,	unīs,
A.	unŭm,	unăm,	unŭm,	unōs,	unās,	ună,
V.	unĕ,	ună,	unŭm,			
A.	unō,	unā,	unō;	unīs,	unīs,	unīs.

---

second. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time: *singŭli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two.

[1] These are declined like the plural of *bonus* (148); *ducenti, ae, a*, two hundred.

[2] Though only in the plural, and only when used substantively. It is then declined like the plural of *mare* (50); *millia, millium, millibus.*

	2. Duo, *two.*			3. Tres, *three.*	
N.	duŏ,	duae,	duŏ,	trēs, *m.* and *f.*	triă, *n.*
G.	duōrŭm,	duārŭm,	duōrŭm,	triŭm,	triŭm,
D.	duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs,	trībŭs,	trībŭs,
A.	duōs, duŏ,	duās,	duŏ,	trēs,	triă,
A.	duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs.	trībŭs,	trībŭs.

Exercise XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annŭs, ı, *m.*	*year.*
Classĭs, classĭs, *f.*	*fleet.*
Fortĭtūdŏ, fortĭtūdĭnĭs, *f.*	*fortitude, bravery.*
Impĕrĭŭm, ĭī, *n.*	*reign, power.*
Nāvĭs, nāvĭs, *f.*	*ship.*
Proelĭŭm, ĭī, *n.*	*battle.*
Vĭr, vĭrī, *m.*	*man, hero.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Unus[1] liber. 2. Duo[1] libri. 3. Liber primus.[1] 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor[2] anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem[2] dies. 14. Decĭmus dies.[3] 15. Decem horae. 16. Decĭma hora. 17. Decem proelĭa. 18. Decĭmum proelium. 19. Horă dīci decĭmă.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

---

[1] Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

[2] The indeclinable numeral adjectives (175, 2) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender, and in any case.

[3] *Dies,* it will be remembered, is generally *masculine.*

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. Personal Pronouns.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

N.	ĕgŏ	tū	
G.	meī	tuī	suī
D.	mihĭ	tibĭ	sibĭ
A.	mē	tē	sē
V.		tū	
Ab.	mē;	tē;	sē;

PLURAL.

N.	nōs	vōs	
G.	nostrŭm) nostrī)	vestrŭm) vestrī)	suī
D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibĭ
A.	nōs	vōs	sē
V.		vōs	
Ab.	nōbīs.	vōbīs	sē.

1. **Substantive Pronouns.** — Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.** — *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. Possessive Pronouns.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives:*

meus, *my,*	noster, *our.*
tuus, *thy, your,*	vester, *your.*
suus, *his, her, its,*	suus, *their.*

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions;[1] *meus, mea, meum; noster, nostra, nostrum:* but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus.*

III. Demonstrative Pronouns.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem.

They are declined as follows:

Hic, *this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hujŭs	hujŭs	hujŭs	hōrŭm	hārŭm	hōrŭm
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	hōs	hās	haec
V.						
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

Illĕ, *he* or *that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	illĕ	illă	illŭd	illī	illae	illă
G.	illīŭs	illīŭs	illīŭs	illōrŭm	illārŭm	illōrŭm
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
A.	illŭm	illām	illŭd	illōs	illās	illă
V.						
A.	illō	illā	illō;	illīs	illīs	illīs.

[1] See *bonus* and *aeger*, 148.

Istĕ, *that.*

Istĕ, *that*, is declined like *illĕ*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

Ipsĕ, *self*, *he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsŭm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
G.	ipsīŭs	ipsīŭs	ipsīŭs	ipsōrŭm	ipsārŭm	ipsōrŭm
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsŭm	ipsăm	ipsŭm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
V.						
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs.

Is, *he*, *that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ĭs	eă	ĭd	ii	eae	eă
G.	ejŭs	ejŭs	ejŭs	eōrŭm	eārŭm	eōrŭm
D.	eī	eī	eī	iis (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iis (eis)
A.	eŭm	eăm	ĭd	eōs	eās	eă
V.						
A.	eō	eā	eō;	iis (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iis (eīs).

Idem, *the same.*

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *ĭdem*, and *iddem* to *ĭdem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem;* thus:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	īdĕm	eădĕm	ĭdĕm	iidĕm	eaedĕm	eădĕm
G.	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	eōrundĕm	eārundĕm	eōrundĕm
D.	eidĕm	eīdĕm	eīdĕm	iisdĕm	iisdĕm	iisdĕm
A.	eundĕm	eandĕm	ĭdĕm	eōsdĕm	eāsdĕm	eădĕm
V.						
A.	eōdĕm	eādĕm	eōdĕm;	iisdĕm	iisdĕm	iisdĕm.

IV. Relative Pronouns.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quī	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibŭs	quibŭs	quibŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
V.						
A.	quō	quā	quō;	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs.

V. Interrogative Pronouns.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

Quis (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quĭs	quae	quĭd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibŭs	quibŭs	quibŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quĭd	quōs	quās	quae
V.						
A.	quō	quā	quō;	quibŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs.

Qui (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

VI. Indefinite Pronouns.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.[1]

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites:*

alĭquis,	alĭqua,	alĭquid	*or* alĭquod,	*some, some one.*
quispiam,	quaepiam,	quidpiam	*or* quodpiam,	*some, some one.*
quīdam,	quaedam,	quiddam	*or* quoddam,	*certain, certain one.*
quisquam,		quidquam,		*any one.*

[1] But after *si, nisi, ne,* and *num,* the Feminine Singular and the Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua;* si quae, si qua. In like manner, *alĭquis* has *alĭqua* in the Feminine Singular and in the Neuter Plural.

II. *The General Indefinites:*

quisque,	quaeque,	quidque	*or* quodque,	*every, every one.*
quīvis,	quaevis,	quidvis	*or* quodvis,	*any one you please.*
quilibet,	quaelibet,	quidlibet	*or* quodlibet,	*any one you please.*

Exercise XVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Consĭlĭum, ĭī, *n.*	*design, plan.*
Epistŏlă, ae, *f.*	*letter.*
Ex, *prep. with abl.*	*from.*
Insŭlă, ae, *f.*	*island.*
Părens, părentĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*parent.*
Pars, partĭs, *f.*	*part, portion.*
Pătrĭă, ae, *f.*	*country, native country.*
Praeclārŭs, ă, ŭm,	*distinguished.*
Prātŭm, ī, *n.*	*meadow.*
Prō, *prep. with abl.*	*for, in behalf of.*
Quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvis,	*whoever, whatever.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,[1] ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.[1] 6. Meă[2] vitā. 7. Patriă tuă. 8. Pro patriā tuā.[2] 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris[2] consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic[2] puer, hi pŭcri. 15. Haec corōnă, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illīus libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae[2] urbs?

---

[1] See 184, 1. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules. See Rule XXXII. 432. Other pronouns are sometimes used as nouns, and parsed in the same way.

[2] The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 32. Hence *meă* is in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with *vitā; nostris*, in the Dative or Ablative Plural Neuter, to agree with *consiliis; hic*, in the Nominative Singular Masculine, to agree with *puer*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lĕgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. Transitive Verbs, — which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*[1] *verbĕrat*, he beats the slave.

II. Intransitive Verbs, — which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. Voices.

195. There are two Voices:[2]

I. The Active Voice, — which represents the subject as acting or existing: *păter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

[1] Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats: beats* (what?) *the slave.*

[2] *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

II. The Passive Voice, — which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. Moods.

196. Moods[1] are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The Indicative Mood, — which either asserts something as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. The Subjunctive Mood, — which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The Imperative Mood, — which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. The Infinitive, — which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *legĕre*, to read.

2. The Gerund, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The Supine, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The Participle, — which, like the English Participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

[1] *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future, — *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love: and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future, — *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. Tenses.

197. There are six tenses:[1]

I. Three Tenses for Incomplete Action:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

II. Three Tenses for Completed Action:

1. Perfect: *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavĕram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavĕro*, I shall have loved.

198. Remarks on Tenses.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.** — The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect*, or *Perfect Definite;* and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect*, or *Perfect Indefinite.*

2. **Principal and Historical.** — Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal:* — Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical:* — Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.** — The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

IV. Numbers.

199. There are two Numbers:[2] Singular and Plural.

---

[1] *Tense* means *time*, and is employed to designate the *time* of an action or event.

[2] *Number* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to number in nouns. See 37.

V. Persons.

200. There are three Persons:[1] First, Second, and Third.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	**ēre,**	**ĕre,**	**īre.**

202. **Principal Parts.** — Four forms of the verb — the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine[2] — are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.** — In any regular verb,

1. The Verb-Stem may be found by dropping the Infinitive Ending: *amāre;* stem, *am.*

2. The Principal Parts may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The Entire Conjugation of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.[3]

---

[1] *Person* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to person in nouns. See 37.

[2] In the Active Voice, all these four forms are usually given as Principal Parts; but, in the Passive, only the first three.

[3] In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am.*

Sum is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sŭm,	essĕ,	fuī,	—.[1]

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sŭm,	*I am,*	sŭmŭs,	*we are,*
ĕs,	*thou art,*[2]	estĭs,	*you are,*
est,	*he is;*	sunt,	*they are.*

Imperfect.

I was.

ĕrăm,	*I was,*	ĕrāmŭs,	*we were,*
erās,	*thou wast,*	erātĭs,	*you were,*
erăt,	*he was;*	erant,	*they were.*

Future.

I shall or *will be.*

ĕrŏ,	*I shall be,*	ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall be,*
erĭs,	*thou wilt be,*	erĭtĭs,	*you will be,*
erĭt,	*he will be;*	erunt,	*they will be.*

Perfect.

I have been, was.

fuī,	*I have been,*	fuĭmŭs,	*we have been,*
fuistī,	*thou hast been,*	fuistĭs,	*you have been,*
fuĭt,	*he has been;*	fuērunt, fuērĕ,	*they have been.*

Pluperfect.

I had been.

fuĕrăm,	*I had been,*	fuĕrāmŭs,	*we had been,*
fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been,*	fuĕrātĭs,	*you had been,*
fuĕrăt,	*he had been;*	fuĕrant,	*they had been.*

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been.*

fuĕrŏ,	*I shall have been,*	fuĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have been,*
fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been,*	fuĕrĭtĭs,	*you will have been,*
fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been;*	fuĕrint,	*they will have been.*

[1] The Supine is wanting in this verb.

[2] Or, *you are: thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse: in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may or *can be.*[1]

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sĭm,	*I may be,*	sīmŭs,	*we may be,*
sīs,	*thou mayst be,*	sītĭs,	*you may be,*
sĭt,	*he may be;*	sint,	*they may be.*

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should be.*

essĕm,	*I might be,*	essēmŭs,	*we might be,*
essēs,	*thou mightst be,*	essētĭs,	*you might be,*
essĕt,	*he might be;*	essent,	*they might be.*

Perfect.

I may or *can have been.*

fuĕrĭm,	*I may have been,*	fuĕrĭmŭs,	*we may have been,*
fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been,*	fuĕrĭtĭs,	*you may have been,*
fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been;*	fuĕrint,	*they may have been.*

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have been.*

fuissĕm,	*I might have been,*	fuissēmŭs,	*we might have been,*
fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been,*	fuissētĭs,	*you might have been,*
fuissĕt,	*he might have been;*	fuissent,	*they might have been.*

Imperative.

Pres.	ĕs,	*be thou,*	estĕ,	*be ye.*
Fut.	estō,	*thou shalt be,*[2]	estōtĕ,	*ye shall be,*
	estō,	*he shall be;*	suntō,	*they shall be.*

Infinitive.

Pres.	essĕ,	*to be.*
Perf.	fuissĕ,	*to have been.*
Fut.	fūtūrŭs[3] essĕ,	*to be about to be.*

Participle.

Fut.	fūtūrŭs,[3]	*about to be.*

---

[1] The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let:* sit, *he may be, may he be, let him be.*

[2] The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let:* esto, *thou shalt be,* or *be thou;* sunto, *they shall be,* or *let them be.*

[3] *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus;* N. *futūrus, a, um,* G. *futūri, ae, i;* so in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

RULE XXXV. — Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite[1] Verb agrees with its Subject[2] in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit,[3] *God made the world.* Cic. Ego rēges ējēci, vos tyrannos intrōdūcĭtis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES. — These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

Thēbāni accūsāti sunt,[4] *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — The subject is generally omitted —

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

Discĭpŭlos mŏneo,[5] ut stŭdia ăment,[5] *I instruct pupils to love*[6] *their studies.* Quint.

---

[1] See 196, I.

[2] With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made:* but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused.*

[3] *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego;* and *introducĭtis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos.*

[4] The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

[5] The subject of *moneo* is *ego.* It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you, he,* or *they,* but must be *I.*

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love.* The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii,* they, referring to *discĭpŭlos.* It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent,* but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discĭpŭlos,* which shows *who* are here meant by *they*

[6] *To love,* or, more literally, *that they may love.*

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. Directions for Parsing Verbs.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (203).

2. Give the Principal Parts (202), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.[1]

3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

Models for parsing the verb sum.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs[2] ĕrāmŭs, *We were.*

Erāmus is an intransitive irregular[3] verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui,* ——[4]. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmus, erātis, erant.* The form *erāmus* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *First* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Sum without Subject.*[5]

Fuī, *I have been.*

Fui is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui.* Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti,*

[1] That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

[2] *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

[3] Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

[4] The *Supine* is wanting.

[5] That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit; fŭĭmus, fuistis, fuērunt, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *First* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied[1] in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

Exercise XVII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.[2] 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.[2] 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, erĭtis.[2] 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fuĕram, fuĕro. 8. Fuĭmus, fuerāmus, fuerĭmus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuĕrat, fuĕrant. 12. Fuĕrit, fuĕrint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuĕrim, fuissem. 18. Fuerĭmus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuĕrit, fuĕrint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He[3] is, they[3] are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I[3] was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

---

[1] See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

[2] In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum, nos sumus, ii sunt.*

[3] The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est.*

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite[1] Verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius[2] regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pătent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vīcĭt, *The king conquered.*

Rex is a noun (31) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class I., as it has a nominative ending *s* (x = g-s, of which *s* is the ending, as *g* belongs to the *stem*. See 50, I. note); STEM, *reg*. Singular: *rex*, *regis*, *regi*, *regem*, *rex*, *rege*. Plural: *reges*, *regum*, *regĭbus*, *reges*, *reges*, *regĭbus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 35, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III.: "The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative."

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cătŏ, Cātōnĭs, *m.*	*Cato*, a distinguished Roman.
Crūdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*unripe.*
Dīlĭgens, Dīlĭgentĭs,	*diligent.*
Discĭpŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*pupil.*

---

[1] See 196, I.

[2] In these examples, the *subjects* are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germānĭă, ae, *f.*	*Germany.*
Jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm.	*pleasant, delightful.*
Laudābĭlĭs, ĕ.	*praiseworthy, laudable.*
Mātūrŭs, ă, ŭm.	*ripe.*
Pōmŭm, ī, *n.*	*fruit.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Pax[1] jucunda[2] est.[3] 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabĭlis est. 7. Libri utĭles sunt. 8. Illi libri utĭles erunt. 9. Ille liber utĭlis fuĕrat. 10. Utĭlis[4] fuisti. 11. Utĭles fuistis. 12. Germania fertĭlis est. 13. Agri fertĭles fuĕrant. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milĭtes fortes sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The pupil is diligent.[5] 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

---

[1] *Pax* is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

[2] *Jucunda* is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 32.

[3] *Est* is a verb in the *Indicative* mood, *Present* tense, *Third* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

[4] *Utĭlis* agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

[5] In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun[1] denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,[1] *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egŏ sŭm nuntiŭs, *I am a messenger.*

Nuntius is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *nunti.* Singular; *nuntius, nuntii, nuntio, nuntium, nuntie, nuntio.* Plural; *nuntii, nuntiōrum nuntiis, nuntios, nuntii, nuntiis.* It is of the Masculine Gender by 45; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extīmescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

[1] Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate.* When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun.* Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns.*

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scrībitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scrībit*, Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scrībit*, Is he writing?

Exercise XIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ancŭs, ī, *m.*	*Ancus*, Roman king.
Conditŏr, conditōrĭs, *m.*	*founder.*
Dēmosthĕnēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Demosthenes*, Athenian orator.
Ebriĕtās, ēbriĕtātĭs, *f.*	*drunkenness.*
Graecŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Greek, Grecian.*
Graecus, ī, *m.*	*Greek, a Greek.*
Insāniă, ae, *f.*	*insanity, madness.*
Inventŏr, inventōrĭs, *m.*	*inventor.*
Mātĕr, mātrĭs, *f.*	*mother.*
Mundŭs, ī, *m.*	*world, universe.*
Nonnĕ, *interrog. part.*	expects answer *yes*.
Nŭm, *interrog. part.*	expects answer *no*.
Philŏsŏphiă, ae, *f.*	*philosophy.*
Rōmă, ae, *f.*	*Rome.*
Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Roman.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, *m.*	*Roman, a Roman.*
Rōmŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*Romulus*, the founder of Rome.
Scīpiŏ, Scīpiōnĭs, *m.*	*Scipio*, Roman general.

II. *Translate into English.*[1]*

1. Ancus[2] fuit[3] rex[4]. 2. Nonne[5] Romŭlus rex fuĕrat? 3. Romŭlus rex fuĕrat. 4. Quis conditor Romae[6] fuit? 5. Romŭlus conditor Romae fuit. 6. Ebriĕtas est insania. 7. Patria[7] est parens omnium nostrum.[6] 8. Graeci[7] multārum artium[8] inventōres erant. 9. Demosthĕnes orātor fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit. 12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicĕro clarissĭmus[9] orātor fuit. 14. Cantus lusciniae jucundissĭmus[9] est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who[10] was the king?[11] 2. Was not[12] Romulus king?[11] 3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the Romans? 5. Was not[12] Scipio the leader of the Romans? 6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

---

[1] In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

[2] See Rule III. page 57.

[3] See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

[4] *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

[5] See 346, II. 1 above.

[6] Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 22.

[7] In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

[8] *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

[9] In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissĭmus* and *jucundissĭmus* (162)?

[10] See 188.

[11] See Rule I.

[12] *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
ămŏ,	ămārĕ,	ămāvī,	ămātŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ămŏ,	*I love,*	ămāmŭs,	*we love,*
ămās,	*thou lovest,*	ămātĭs,	*you love,*
ămăt,	*he loves;*	ămant,	*they love.*

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

ămābăm,	*I was loving,*	ămābāmŭs,	*we were loving,*
ămābās,	*thou wast loving,*	ămābātĭs,	*you were loving,*
ămābăt,	*he was loving;*	ămābant,	*they were loving.*

FUTURE.

I shall or *will love.*

ămābŏ,	*I shall love,*	ămābĭmŭs,	*we shall love,*
ămābĭs,	*thou wilt love,*	ămābĭtĭs,	*you will love,*
ămābĭt,	*he will love;*	ămābunt,	*they will love.*

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

ămāvī,	*I have loved,*	ămāvĭmŭs,	*we have loved,*
ămāvistī,	*thou hast loved,*	ămāvistĭs,	*you have loved,*
ămāvĭt,	*he has loved;*	ămāvērunt, ērĕ,	*they have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

ămāvĕrăm,	*I had loved,*	ămāvĕrāmŭs,	*we had loved,*
ămāvĕrās,	*thou hadst loved,*	ămāvĕrātĭs,	*you had loved,*
ămāvĕrăt,	*he had loved;*	ămāvĕrant,	*they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have loved.*

ămāvĕrŏ,	*I shall have loved,*	ămāvĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have loved,*	ămāvĕrĭtĭs,	*you will have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭt,	*he will have loved;*	ămāvĕrint,	*they will have loved.*

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may or *can love.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ămĕm,	*I may love,*	**ămēmŭs,**	*we may love,*
ămēs,	*thou mayst love,*	**ămētĭs,**	*you may love,*
ămĕt,	*he may love;*	**ăment,**	*they may love.*

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should love.*

ămārĕm,	*I might love,*	**ămārēmŭs,**	*we might love,*
ămārēs,	*thou mightst love,*	**ămārētĭs,**	*you might love,*
ămārĕt,	*he might love;*	**ămārent,**	*they might love.*

Perfect.

I may or *can have loved.*

ămāvĕrĭm,	*I may have loved,*	**ămāvĕrĭmŭs,**	*we may have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have loved,*	**ămāvĕrĭtĭs,**	*you may have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭt,	*he may have loved;*	**ămāvĕrint,**	*they may have loved.*

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have loved.*

ămāvissĕm,	*I might have loved,*	**ămāvissēmŭs,**	*we might have loved,*
ămāvissēs,	*thou mightst have loved,*	**ămāvissētĭs,**	*you might have loved,*
ămāvissĕt,	*he might have loved;*	**ămāvissent,**	*they might have loved.*

Imperative.

Pres. **ămā,**	*love thou;*	**ămātĕ,**	*love ye.*
Fut. **ămātō,**	*thou shalt love,*	**ămātōtĕ,**	*ye shall love,*
ămātō,	*he shall love;*	**ămantō,**	*they shall love.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **ămārĕ,** *to love.*
Perf. **ămāvissĕ,** *to have loved.*
Fut. **ămātūrŭs**[1] **essĕ,** *to be about to love.*

Participle.

Pres. **ămans,**[2] *loving.*
Fut. **ămātūrŭs,**[1] *about to love.*

Gerund.

Gen. **ămandī,** *of loving,*
Dat. **ămandō,** *for loving,*
Acc. **ămandŭm,** *loving,*
Abl. **ămandō,** *by loving.*

Supine.

Acc. **ămātŭm,** *to love,*
Abl. **ămātū,** *to love, be loved.*

[1] Decline like *bonus,* 148. [2] Decline like *prudens,* 153.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămŏr,	ămārī,	ămātŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămŏr	ămāmŭr
ămārĭs, *or* rĕ	ămāmĭnī
ămātŭr;	ămantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

ămābăr	ămābāmŭr
ămābārĭs, *or* rĕ	ămābāmĭnī
ămābātŭr;	ămābantŭr.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be loved.*

ămābŏr	ămābĭmŭr
ămābĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	ămābĭmĭnī
ămābĭtŭr;	ămābuntŭr.

PERFECT.

I have been or *was loved.*

ămātŭs sŭm[1]	ămātī sŭmŭs
ămātŭs ĕs	ămātī estĭs
ămātŭs est;	ămātī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

ămātŭs ĕrăm[1]	ămātī ĕrāmŭs
ămātŭs ĕrās	ămātī ĕrātĭs
ămātŭs ĕrăt;	ămātī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been loved.*

ămātŭs ĕrō[1]	ămātī ĕrĭmŭs
ămātŭs ĕrĭs	ămātī ĕrĭtĭs
ămātŭs ĕrĭt;	ămātī ĕrunt.

[1] *Fui, fuisti,* etc., are sometimes used for *sum, es,* etc.; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum.* So *fuĕram, fuĕras,* etc., for *ĕram, ĕras,* etc.; also *fuĕro, fuĕris,* etc., *for ĕro, ĕris,* etc.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may or *can be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămĕr	ămēmŭr
ămērĭs, *or* rĕ	ămēmĭnī
ămētŭr;	ăment̆ur.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should be loved.*

ămārĕr	ămārēmŭr
ămārērĭs, *or* rĕ	ămārēmĭnī
ămārētŭr;	ămārentŭr.

Perfect.

I may have been loved.

ămātŭs sĭm[1]	ămātī sīmŭs
ămātŭs sīs	ămātī sītĭs
ămātŭs sĭt;	ămātī sint.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have been loved.*

ămātŭs essĕm[1]	ămātī essēmŭs
ămātŭs essēs	ămātī essētĭs
ămātŭs essĕt;	ămātī essent.

Imperative.

Pres. ămārĕ, *be thou loved;*	ămāmĭnī, *be ye loved.*
Fut. ămātŏr, *thou shalt be loved,* ămātŏr, *he shall be loved;*	ămantŏr, *they shall be loved.*

Infinitive.

Pres ămārī, *to be loved.*

Perf. ămātŭs essĕ, *to have been loved.*

Fut. ămātŭm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

Participle.

Perf. ămātŭs, *having been loved.*

Fut. ămandŭs, *to be loved.*

---

[1] *Fuĕrim, fuĕris,* etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis,* etc. So also *fuissem, fuisses,* etc., for *essem, esses,* etc.

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vōs laudāvistĭs, *You have praised.*

Laudavistis is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo;* STEM, *laud.* Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum.* Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavisti, laudāvit, laudavĭmus, laudavistis, laudavērunt,* or *laudavēre.* The form *laudavistis* is found in the *Active* voice, *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *Second* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its subject *vos,* according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistĭs, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis,* above, except that it agrees with *vos,* implied in the ending *istis;* while *laudavistis,* above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vĭtŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *to blame.*
Laudŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *to praise.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.[1] 2. Amas, amābas, amābis. 3. Amat, amant.[1] 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

[1] The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike,* and in what they are *unlike.* Thus *amo, amābam, amābo,* have the letters *am*

bunt.[1] 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabĭmus. 7. Amāvi, amavĕram, amavĕro. 8. Amāvit, amavĕrat, amavĕrit. 9. Amāvi, amavĭmus. 10. Amavĕram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavĕro, amaverĭmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavĕrim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverĭmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavĕrit, amavĕrint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabĕris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

(the stem, 203) in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, — *o, ābam, ābo*. In the forms *amat, amant*, there is a still closer resemblance: not only is the stem *am* common to both, but the endings have the letters *at* in common; or, in other words, the plural ending *ant* differs from the singular ending *at* only in inserting *n*: AT, ANT.

[1] Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *ābunt* differs from the singular ending *ābit*, not only in inserting *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: ABIT, ABUNT.

5. Amabĭtur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabĭmur. 7. Amātus[1] sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti[1] sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

---

[1] The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION — Both Voices.

Exercise XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.[1] 2. Laudābo, laudābor.[2] 3. Laudābam, laudābar.[2] 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.[2] 6. Laudat, laudatur.[1] 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabĭtur. 9. Amet, amētur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavĕrat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavĕrit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

---

[1] In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices, — the Active and the Passive, — and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r;* the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r;* or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

[2] Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings, — in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — First and Second Declensions.[1] Direct Object.

RULE V. — Direct Object.

379. The Direct Object[2] of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.*[3] Cic. Lĭbĕra rem publĭcam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pŏpŭli Rōmāni sălūtem dēfendĭte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

---

[1] It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (42, 45). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

[2] The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *salūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

[3] In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made;* but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *defendĭte*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publĭcam* follows *lĭbĕra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deŭs mundŭm aedĭfĭcāvĭt, *God made the world.*

Mundum is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, mund. Singular: *mundus, mundi, mundo, mundum, munde, mundo.* Plural: *mundi, mundōrum, mundis, mundos, mundi, mundis.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 45; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

Exercise XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedĭfĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to build.*
Arŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to plough.*
Cantŏ, ārĕ, avī, ātŭm,	*to sing.*
Itălĭă, ae, *f.*	*Italy.*
Lĭbĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to liberate.*
Rĕnŏvŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to renew.*
Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to hope.*
Tarquĭnĭŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*Tarquinius*, Roman king.
Thĕmistŏclēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Themistocles*, Athenian commander.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lusciniam laudo.[1] 2. Lusciniam laudāmus. 3. Luscinias laudat. 4. Luscinias laudant. 5. Luscinia laudātur. 6. Lusciniae laudantur. 7. Patriam amāmus. 8. Pro patriā[2] pugnabĭmus. 9. Nonne[3] Themistŏcles patriam liberāvit? 10. Patriam liberāvit. 11. Italiam lĭbĕravērunt. 12. Italia liberāta[4] est. 13. Tarquinius templum aedĭfĭcā-

[1] *Lusciniam* is the *Direct Object* of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

[2] See Rule XXXII. page 24.

[3] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[4] For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedĭfĭcābat. 15. Templa aedĭfĭcavĕrant. 16. Templa aedĭfĭcāta erant. 17. Templum aedĭfĭcātum erit. 18. Puĕrum laudabāmus. 19. Puĕri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne[1] bellum renovātum est?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not[1] praise the boys?[2] 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not[1] liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION — THIRD DECLENSION.[3]

ADVERBS.

RULE LI. — Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs[4] qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Săpientes fēlĭcĭter[4] vīvunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Făcile[4] doctissĭmus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud[4] ălĭter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

---

[1] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[2] The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

[3] The pupil should now review the Third Declension (48–54).

[4] The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Felicĭter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (live *happily*). *Facĭle*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissĭmus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *ălĭter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Săpientēs fēlīcĭtĕr vīvunt, *The wise live happily.*

Felicĭter is an adverb, and qualifies *vīvunt*, according to Rule LI.: "Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS."

Exercise XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elŏquentiă, ae, *f.*	*eloquence.*
Expugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to take, take by storm.*
Fortĭtĕr, *adv.*	*bravely.*
Jŭventūs, jŭventūtĭs, *f.*	*youth.*
Ornŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to adorn, be an ornament to.*
Pĭĕtās, pĭĕtātĭs, *f.*	*filial affection, piety, duty.*
Pugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to fight.*
Servŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to preserve, keep, save.*
Vŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to fly.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne[1] avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem[2] aedĭficāvit. 6. Urbs aedĭficāta[3] est. 7. Urbes aedĭficātae[3] erunt. 8. Milĭtes fortĭter[4] pugnavērunt. 9. Scipio[5] milĭtes laudāvit. 10. Scipio[5] milĭtum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipiōnem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milĭtes patriam amant. 16. Milĭtes[5] pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Pĭĕtas puĕros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

---

[1] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[2] *Urbem*, direct object of *aedĭficāvit*, according to Rule V.

[3] Why *aedĭficāta* in one case, and *aedĭficātae* in the other? Why not *aedĭficātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

[4] *Fortĭter*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāvērunt*, according to Rule LI.

[5] In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not[1] love birds?[2] 3. We love birds.[2] 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not[1] save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shepherds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.[3]

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to assemble, call together.*
Duplĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to double, increase.*
Dux, dŭcĭs, *m.*	*general, leader.*
Fĭdēs, fĭdēī, *f.*	*faith, fidelity, word,*[4] *promise.*
Fŭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to rout.*
Hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs, *m.*	*man.*
Sĕnātŭs, ūs, *m.*	*senate.*
Stĭmŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to stimulate.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homĭnes[5] cantum lusciniae[6] laudant. 2. Cantus lusciniae laudātur. 3. Romŭlus exercĭtum fugat. 4. Nonne

---

[1] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[2] Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

[3] The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 119).

[4] To keep one's word, *fidem servāre:* I keep my word, *fidem meam servo,* or *fidem servo,* as the Latin possessives, *meus,* my, *tuus,* your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

[5] In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homĭnes* (51, II.), *milĭtes* (50, II.), *stimulāvit* (205)?

[6] See Rule XVI. page 22.

exercĭtum fugavīmus? 5. Exercĭtus fugātus est. 6. Exercĭtus fugātus erit. 7. Consul senātum convocāvit. 8. Senātus convocātus est. 9. Senātus consŭlem laudāvit. 10. Spes victoriae milĭtes stimulāvit. 11. Numĕrum diērum duplicāvi. 12. Numĕrus diērum duplicātus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.[1] 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — Adjectives.[2]

Exercise XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to enlarge.*
Condemnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to condemn.*
Hannĭbăl, Hannĭbălĭs, *m.*	*Hannibal*, Carthaginian general.
Innŏcens, innŏcentĭs,	*innocent.*
Nōbĭlĭs, ĕ,	*noble.*
Nŏvŭs, ă, ŭm,	*new.*
Occŭpŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to occupy.*
Pūnĭcŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Carthaginian, Punic.*

[1] See note 4, preceding page.

[2] The pupil should now review Adjectives (146–162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam[1] ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram[1] ampliavĕrat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta[2] est. 5. Hannĭbal multas civitātes occupāvit. 6. Judĭces homĭnem innocentissĭmum[3] condemnavērunt. 7. Num Punĭcum bellum renovātum est? 8. Nonne Punĭcum bellum renovātum est? 9. Punĭcum bellum renovātum est. 10. Romāni nobilissĭmas[3] urbes expugnavērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION — PRONOUNS.[4]

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alĭquĭs, ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd *or* ălĭquŏd,	*some one, somebody.*
Dēlectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to delight.*
Dĭlĭgentĭă, ae, *f.*	*diligence.*
Nōn, *adv.*	*not.*
Sălūtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to salute.*
Suŭs, ă, ŭm,	*his, her, its, their.*

[1] See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

[2] Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

[3] In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

[4] The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc[1] urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabīmus. 3. Quis te[2] salutāvit? 4. Pater meus[1] te salūtat. 5. Haec[1] vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos[2] delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se[2] amant. 8. Fratres tui[1] laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos[3] amat. 11. Pueri boni parentes suos[3] amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not[4] blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not[5] your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not[5] some one praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not[4] blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

---

[1] These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

[2] Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

[3] The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her*, *its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular;* but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *pueri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

[4] When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object*, *Adverb*, *Verb;* but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

[5] Nonne.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mŏneŏ,	mŏnērĕ,	mŏnuī,	mŏnĭtŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏneŏ	mŏnēmŭs
mŏnēs	mŏnētĭs
mŏnĕt ;	mŏnent.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mŏnēbăm	mŏnēbāmŭs
mŏnēbās	mŏnēbātĭs
mŏnēbăt ;	mŏnēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will advise.*

mŏnēbŏ	mŏnēbĭmŭs
mŏnēbĭs	mŏnēbĭtĭs
mŏnēbĭt ;	mŏnēbunt.

PERFECT.

I advised or *have advised.*

mŏnuī	mŏnuĭmŭs
mŏnuistī	mŏnuistĭs
mŏnuĭt ;	mŏnuērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mŏnuĕrăm	mŏnuĕrāmŭs
mŏnuĕrās	mŏnuĕrātĭs
mŏnuĕrăt ;	mŏnuĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have advised.*

mŏnuĕrŏ	mŏnuĕrĭmŭs
mŏnuĕrĭs	mŏnuĕrĭtĭs
mŏnuĕrĭt ;	mŏnuĕrint.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may or *can advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏn**eăm**	mŏn**eāmŭs**
mŏn**eās**	mŏn**eātĭs**
mŏn**eăt;**	mŏn**eant.**

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should advise.*

mŏn**ērĕm**	mŏn**ērēmŭs**
mŏn**ērēs**	mŏn**ērētĭs**
mŏn**ērĕt;**	mŏn**ērent.**

Perfect.

I may have advised.

mŏnu**ĕrĭm**	mŏnu**ĕrĭmŭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭs**	mŏnu**ĕrĭtĭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭt;**	mŏnu**ĕrint.**

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have advised.*

mŏnu**issĕm**	mŏnu**issēmŭs**
mŏnu**issēs**	mŏnu**issētĭs**
mŏnu**issĕt;**	mŏnu**issent.**

Imperative.

Pres.	mŏn**ē,** *advise thou;*	mŏn**ētĕ,** *advise ye.*
Fut.	mŏn**ētō,** *thou shalt advise,* mŏn**ētō,** *he shall advise;*	mŏn**ētōtĕ,** *ye shall advise,* mŏn**entō,** *they shall advise*

Infinitive.

Pres. mŏn**ērĕ,** *to advise.*
Perf. mŏnu**issĕ,** *to have advised.*
Fut. mŏnĭt**ūrŭs essĕ,** *to be about to advise.*

Participle.

Pres. mŏn**ens,** *advising.*
Fut. mŏnĭt**ūrŭs,** *about to advise.*

Gerund.

Gen. mŏn**endī,** *of advising,*
Dat. mŏn**endō,** *for advising,*
Acc. mŏn**endŭm,** *advising,*
Abl. mŏn**endō,** *by advising.*

Supine.

Acc. mŏnĭt**ŭm,** *to advise,*
Abl. mŏnĭt**ū,** *to advise, be advised.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mŏne**ŏr**,	mŏn**ērī**,	mŏnĭt**ŭs sŭm.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ŏr**	mŏn**ēmŭr**
mŏn**ērĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏn**ēmĭnī**
mŏn**ētŭr**;	mŏne**ntŭr.**

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mŏn**ēbăr**	mŏn**ēbāmŭr**
mŏn**ēbārĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏn**ēbāmĭnī**
mŏn**ēbātŭr**;	mŏn**ēbantŭr.**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be advised.*

mŏn**ēbŏr**	mŏn**ēbĭmŭr**
mŏn**ēbĕrĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏn**ēbĭmĭnī**
mŏn**ēbĭtŭr**;	mŏn**ēbuntŭr.**

PERFECT.

I have been or *was advised.*

mŏnĭt**ŭs sŭm**[1]	mŏnĭt**ī sŭmŭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕs**	mŏnĭt**ī estĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs est**;	mŏnĭt**ī sunt.**

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrăm**[1]	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrāmus**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrās**	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrātĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs erăt**;	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrant.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been advised.*

mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrō**[1]	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrĭmŭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrĭs**	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrĭtĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrĭt**;	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrunt.**

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ăr**	mŏne**āmŭr**
mŏne**ārĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	mŏne**āmĭnī**
mŏne**ātŭr;**	mŏne**antŭr.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be advised.*

mŏnē**rĕr**	mŏnē**rēmŭr**
mŏnē**rērĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	mŏnē**rēmĭnī**
mŏnē**rētŭr;**	mŏnē**rentŭr.**

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mŏnĭtŭs **sĭm**[1]	mŏnĭtī **sīmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **sīs**	mŏnĭtī **sītĭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **sĭt;**	mŏnĭtī **sint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been advised.*

mŏnĭtŭs **essĕm**[1]	mŏnĭtī **essēmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **essēs**	mŏnĭtī **essētĭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **essĕt;**	mŏnĭtī **essent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mŏnē**rĕ,** *be thou advised;*	mŏnē**mĭnī,** *be ye advised.*
FUT. mŏnē**tŏr,** *thou shalt be advised,*	
mŏnē**tŏr,** *he shall be advised;*	mŏne**ntŏr,** *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. mŏnē**rī,** *to be advised,*	
PERF. mŏnĭtŭs **essĕ,** *to have been advised,*	PERF. mŏnĭtŭs, *advised,*
FUT. mŏnĭtŭm **īrī,** *to be about to be advised.*	FUT. mŏne**ndŭs,** *to be advised.*

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Active Voice.

Exercise XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mŏneŏ, mŏnērĕ, mŏnui, mŏnĭtŭm,	*to advise.*
Pāreŏ, pārērĕ, pāruī, pārĭtŭm,	*to obey.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.[1] 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebĭmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuĕram, monuĕro. 7. Monuĭmus, monuerāmus, monuerĭmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuĕrat, monuĕrant. 10. Monuĕrit, monuĕrint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuĕrim, monuissem. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuĕrit, monuĕrint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

---

[1] The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — Active Voice.

Exercise XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to sing.*
Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī. ātŭm,	*to hope.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.[1] 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabĭmus, parebĭmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravĕram, paruĕram. 12. Speravĕro, paruĕro. 13. Speravĭmus, paruĭmus. 14. Speravĕrat, paruĕrat. 15. Speravĕrint, paruĕrint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

---

[1] In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations, — the First and the Second, — and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Active Voice.
Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XXX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aurŭm, ī, *n.*	*gold.*
Flōs, flōrĭs, *m.*	*flower.*
Hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm,	*to have, hold.*
Mĕreŏ, mĕrērĕ, mĕruī, mĕrĭtŭm,	*to deserve, merit.*
Phĭlŏsŏphŭs, ī, *m.*	*philosopher.*
Pondŭs, ponderĭs, *n.*	*weight, mass.*
Praebeŏ, praebērĕ, praebuī, praebĭtŭm,	*to furnish, give.*
Praemiŭm, iī, *n.*	*reward.*
Tăceŏ, tăcērĕ, tăcuī, tăcĭtŭm,	*to be silent.*
Terreŏ, terrērĕ, terruī, terrĭtŭm,	*to frighten, terrify.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puĕri libros habent. 3. Libros utīles[1] habēmus. 4. Librum utĭlem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum[1] amīcum habēbis? 6. Bonum amīcum habēbo. 7. Bonos amīcos habuĭmus. 8. Rex amīcos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex[2] magnum auri pondus[3] habuĕrat. 11. Gloriam veram habebĭtis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philosŏphus tacēbat. 15. Discipŭlus praemium meret.

---

[1] Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

[2] In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject, verb,* and *object,* before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

[3] When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri,* the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three[1] books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.[2] 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebĭmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monĭtus est, monĭti sunt. 6. Monĭtus erat, monĭti erant. 7. Monĭtus erit, monĭti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebĭtur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebĭmus, monebĭmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

---

[1] Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

[2] *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admŏneŏ, admŏnērĕ, admŏnuī, admŏnĭtŭm,	*to admonish.*
Amŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to love.*
Invĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to invite.*
Laudŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to praise.*
Terreŏ, terrērĕ, terruī, terrĭtŭm,	*to terrify.*
Vĭtŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to blame.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabĭtur, terrebĭtur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrĭtus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrĭti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrĭtus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrĭti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrĭti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrĭtus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XXXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Apŭd, *prep. with acc.*	*near, before, among.*
Exerceŏ, exercērĕ, exercuī, exercĭtŭm,	*to exercise, train.*
Frāter, frātrĭs, *m.*	*brother.*
Măgistĕr, măgistrī, *m.*	*master, teacher.*
Mĕmŏrĭă, ae, *f.*	*memory.*
Puĕr, puĕrī, *m.*	*boy.*
Quĭs, quae, quĭd,[1]	*who, which, what?*
Rectē, *adv.*	*rightly.*
Tuŭs, ă, ŭm,	*your, yours.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puĕri recte monentur. 5. Discipŭli recte monĭti sunt. 6. Discipŭlus recte monĭtus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonĭtus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonĭti erunt. 9. Nonne admonĭti sumus? 10. Recte admonĭti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

[1] For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceātur.[1] 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified. 3. Let[2] the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself[3] was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cămillŭs, ī, *m.*	*Camillus*, Roman general.
Exspectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to await, expect.*
Hostĭs, is, *m.* and *f.*	*enemy.*
Ingens, ingentĭs,	*huge, large, great.*
Lĕgiŏ, lĕgiōnĭs, *f.*	*legion, body of soldiers.*
Nōn, *adv.*	*not.*
Nŭmĕrŭs, ī, *m.*	*number.*
Optŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to wish for, desire.*
Pĕcūniă, ae, *f.*	*money.*

[1] *Exerceātur;* the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let.* See 196. I 2.

[2] *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

[3] *Himself* = ipse. See 186.

Philŏsŏphŭs, ī, *m.*	*philosopher.*
Praeceptŏr, praeceptōrĭs, *m.*	*teacher.*
Proeliŭm, iī, *n.*	*battle.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, *m.*	*Roman, a Roman.*
Sŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to conquer.*
Vĕrēcundiă, ae, *f.*	*modesty.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt. 3. Omnes discipŭli paruĕrant.[1] 4. Romāni hostem exspectābant. 5. Romāni[2] ingentem hostium numĕrum[3] exspectavĕrant.[1] 6. Hostes proelium exspectābant. 7. Praeceptor tacēbat. 8. Discipŭli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem ornat. 10. Philosŏphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philosŏphi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you. 3. Did you not await the enemy?[4] 4. We awaited the enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?[5] 14. They were put to flight.

---

[1] In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

[2] Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

[3] *Ingentem hostium numĕrum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

[4] Put the Latin word in the plural.

[5] *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rĕgŏ,	rĕgĕrĕ,	rexī,	rectŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgŏ	rĕgĭmŭs
rĕgĭs	rĕgĭtĭs
rĕgĭt;	rĕgunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rĕgēbăm	rĕgēbāmŭs
rĕgēbās	rĕgēbātĭs
rĕgēbăt;	rĕgēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will rule.*

rĕgăm	rĕgēmŭs
rĕgēs	rĕgētĭs
rĕgĕt;	rĕgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or *have ruled.*

rexī	rexĭmŭs
rexistī	rexistĭs
rexĭt;	rexērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexĕrăm	rexĕrāmŭs
rexĕrās	rexĕrātĭs
rexĕrăt;	rexĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have ruled.*

rexĕrŏ	rexĕrĭmŭs
rexĕrĭs	rexĕrĭtĭs
rexĕrĭt;	rexĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕg**am**	rĕg**āmŭs**
rĕg**ās**	rĕg**ātĭs**
rĕg**at;**	rĕg**ant.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should rule.*

rĕg**ĕrĕm**	rĕg**ĕrēmŭs**
rĕg**ĕrēs**	rĕg**ĕrētĭs**
rĕg**ĕret;**	rĕg**ĕrent.**

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rex**ĕrĭm**	rex**ĕrĭmŭs**
rex**ĕrĭs**	rex**ĕrĭtĭs**
rex**ĕrĭt;**	rex**ĕrint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have ruled.*

rex**issĕm**	rex**issēmŭs**
rex**issēs**	rex**issētĭs**
rex**issĕt;**	rex**issent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	reg**ĕ,** *rule thou;*	rĕg**ĭtĕ,**	*rule ye.*
FUT.	rĕg**ĭtō,** *thou shalt rule,*	rĕg**ĭtōtĕ,**	*ye shall rule,*
	rĕg**ĭtō,** *he shall rule;*	rĕg**untō,**	*they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	rĕg**ĕrĕ,**	*to rule.*
PERF.	rex**issĕ,**	*to have ruled.*
FUT.	rect**ūrŭs essĕ,**	*to be about to rule.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	rĕg**ens,**	*ruling.*
FUT.	rect**ūrŭs,**	*about to rule.*

GERUND.

Gen.	rĕg**endī,**	*of ruling,*
Dat.	rĕg**endŏ,**	*for ruling,*
Acc.	rĕg**endŭm,**	*ruling,*
Abl.	rĕg**endŏ,**	*by ruling.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	rect**ŭm,**	*to rule,*
Abl.	rect**ū,**	*to rule, be ruled.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rĕgŏr,	rĕgī,	rectŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgŏr	rĕgĭmŭr
rĕgĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgĭmĭnī
rĕgĭtŭr;	rĕguntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rĕgēbăr	rĕgēbāmŭr
rĕgēbārĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgēbāmĭnī
rĕgēbātŭr;	rĕgēbantŭr.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be ruled.*

rĕgăr	rĕgēmŭr
rĕgērĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgēmĭnī
rĕgētŭr;	rĕgentŭr.

PERFECT.

I have been or *was ruled.*

rectŭs sŭm [1]	rectī sŭmŭs
rectŭs ĕs	rectī estĭs
rectŭs est;	rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rectŭs ĕrăm [1]	rectī ĕrāmŭs
rectŭs ĕrās	rectī ĕrātĭs
rectŭs ĕrăt;	rectī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been ruled.*

rectŭs ĕrō [1]	rectī ĕrĭmŭs
rectŭs ĕrĭs	rectī ĕrĭtĭs
rectŭs ĕrĭt;	rectī ĕrunt.

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgăr	rĕgāmŭr
rĕgārĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgāmĭnī
rĕgātŭr;	rĕgantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be ruled.*

rĕgĕrĕr	rĕgĕrēmŭr
rĕgĕrērĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgĕrēmĭnī
rĕgĕrētŭr;	rĕgĕrentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectŭs sĭm [1]	rectī sīmŭs
rectŭs sīs	rectī sītĭs
rectŭs sĭt;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been ruled.*

rectŭs essĕm [1]	rectī essēmŭs
rectŭs essēs	rectī essētĭs
rectŭs essĕt;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	rĕgĕrĕ, *be thou ruled;*	rĕgĭmĭnī, *be ye ruled.*
FUT.	rĕgĭtŏr, *thou shalt be ruled,* rĕgĭtŏr, *he shall be ruled;*	rĕguntŏr, *ye shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. rĕgī, *to be ruled.*	
PERF. rectŭs essĕ, *to have been ruled.*	PERF. rectŭs, *ruled.*
FUT. rectŭm īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*	FUT. rĕgendŭs, *to be ruled.*

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION — Active Voice.

Exercise XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcŏ, ĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,	*to lead.*
Rĕgŏ, ĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm,	*to rule, govern.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regĭmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regĭtis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexĕram, rexĕro. 9. Rexĭmus, rexerāmus, rexerĭmus. 10. Regas, regĕres, rexĕris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerĭtis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regerēmus, regĕrem. 14. Rexĕrit, rexĕrint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regĭte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — Active Voice.

Exercise XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm,	*to say, tell, speak.*
Vŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to call.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.[1] 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocavĭmus, tacuĭmus, dixĭmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt. 8. Vocavĕrat, tacuĕrat, dixĕrat. 9. Vocavĕrint, tacuĕrint, dixĕrint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicĕrent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicīte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

[1] In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION — Active Voice.
Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Anĭmŭs, ī, *m.*	*mind, passion.*
Bĕnĕ, *adv.*	*well.*
Dēfectiŏ, dēfectiōnĭs, *f.*	*eclipse.*
Dĭsertē, *adv.*	*clearly, eloquently.*
Edūcŏ, ēdūcĕrĕ, ēduxī, ēductŭm,	*to lead forth.*
Indĭcŏ, indĭcĕrĕ, indixī, indictŭm,	*to declare.*
Lătīnē, *adv.*	*in Latin.*
Praedĭcŏ, praedĭcĕrĕ, praedixī, praedictŭm,	*to predict, foretell.*
Săpienter, *adv.*	*wisely.*
Thălēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Thales*, a philosopher.
Tullŭs, ī, *m.*	*Tullus*, a Roman name.
Vērŭm, ī, *n.*	*truth.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicĕro in senātu dixĕrat? 3. Cicĕro diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5. Philosŏphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosŏphi sapienter dixĕrant. 7. Oratōres Latīne dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes eduxit. 9. Hannĭbal exercītum in Italiam duxit. 10. Quis bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regĭmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regĭtur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regĭmus, regĭmur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducĭmur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducĭtur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monĭtus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monĭti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monĭtus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monĭtus erit, ductus erit.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundŭs, ī, *m.*	*world.*
Semper, *adv.*	*always, ever.*
Vērŭm, ī, *n.*	*truth.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regĭtur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regētur. 4. Haec civĭtas bene regĭtur. 5. Hae civitātes bene reguntur. 6. Civitātes rectae sunt. 7. Animus regātur. 8. Exercĭtus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercĭtus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum[1] erat. 11. Multa bella indicta[1] sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

[1] Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let[1] the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — Miscellaneous Examples.

Exercise XLI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallŭs, ī, *m.*	*Gallus*, a proper name.
Hĭrundŏ, hĭrundĭnĭs, *f.*	*swallow.*
Lūnă, ae, *f.*	*moon.*
Nuntiŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to proclaim, announce.*
Sensŭs, ūs, *m.*	*feeling, perception.*
Supplĭcĭŭm, ĭī, *n.*	*punishment.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundĭnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundĭnes adventum veris nuntiavĕrant. 3. Discipŭli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne anĭmal sensus habet. 8. Pueri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

---

[1] *Let be spoken*, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiŏ,	audīrĕ,	audīvī,	audītŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audīmŭs
audīs	audītĭs
audĭt;	audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiēbăm	audiēbāmŭs
audiēbās	audiēbātĭs
audiēbāt;	audiēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will hear.*

audiăm	audiēmŭs
audiēs	audiētĭs
audiĕt;	audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or *have heard.*

audīvī	audīvĭmŭs
audīvistī	audīvistĭs
audīvĭt;	audīvērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīvĕrăm	audīvĕrāmŭs
audīvĕrās	audīvĕrātĭs
audīverăt;	audīvĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have heard.*

audīvĕrō	audīvĕrĭmŭs
audīvĕrĭs	audīvĕrĭtĭs
audīvĕrĭt;	audīvĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiăm	audiāmŭs
audiās	audiātĭs
audiăt ;	audiant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should hear.*

audīrĕm	audīrēmŭs
audīrēs	audīrētĭs
audīrĕt ;	audīrent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audīvĕrĭm	audīvĕrĭmŭs
audīvĕrĭs	audīvĕrĭtĭs
audīvĕrĭt ;	audīvĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have heard.*

audīvissĕm	audīvissēmŭs
audīvissēs	audīvissētĭs
audīvissĕt ;	audīvissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audī, *hear thou ;*	audītĕ, *hear ye.*
FUT.	audītō, *thou shalt hear,*	audītōtĕ, *ye shall hear,*
	audītō, *he shall hear ;*	audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	audīrĕ,	*to hear.*
PERF.	audivissĕ,	*to have heard.*
FUT.	auditūrŭs essĕ,	*to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	audiens,	*hearing.*
FUT.	auditūrŭs,	*about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	audiendī,	*of hearing.*
Dat.	audiendŏ,	*for hearing.*
Acc.	audiendŭm,	*hearing.*
Abl.	audiendŏ,	*by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	auditŭm,	*to hear.*
Abl.	auditū,	*to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiŏr,	audīrī,	audītŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiŏr	audīmŭr
audīrĭs, *or* rĕ	audīmĭnī
audītŭr;	audiuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbăr	audiēbāmŭr
audiēbārĭs, *or* rĕ	audiēbāmĭnī
audiēbātŭr;	audiēbāntŭr.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be heard.*

audiăr	audiēmŭr
audiērĭs, *or* rĕ	audiēmĭnī
audiētŭr;	audiēntŭr.

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

audītŭs sŭm [1]	audītī sŭmŭs
audītŭs ĕs	audītī estĭs
audītŭs est;	audītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

audītŭs ĕrăm [1]	audītī ĕrāmŭs
audītŭs ĕrās	audītī ĕrātĭs
audītŭs ĕrăt;	audītī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been heard.*

audītŭs ĕrō [1]	audītī ĕrĭmŭs
audītŭs ĕrĭs	audītī ĕrĭtĭs
audītŭs ĕrĭt;	audītī ĕrunt.

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**ăr**	audi**āmŭr**
audi**ārĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	audi**āmĭnī**
audi**ātŭr;**	audi**antŭr.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be heard.*

audī**rĕr**	audī**rēmŭr**
audī**rērĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	audī**rēmĭnī**
audī**rētŭr;**	audī**rentŭr.**

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītŭs **sĭm** [1]	audītī **sīmŭs**
audītŭs **sīs**	audītī **sītĭs**
audītŭs **sĭt;**	audītī **sint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been heard.*

audītŭs **essĕm** [1]	audītī **essēmŭs**
audītŭs **essēs**	audītī **essētĭs**
audītŭs **essĕt;**	audītī **essent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audī**rĕ,** *be thou heard;*	audī**mĭnī,** *be ye heard.*
FUT.	audī**tŏr,** *thou shalt be heard,* audī**tŏr,** *he shall be heard;*	audi**untŏr,** *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audī**rī,** *to be heard.*

PERF. audītŭs **essĕ,** *to have been heard.*

FUT. audītŭm **īrī,** *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. audītŭs, *heard.*

FUT. audi**endŭs,** *to be heard.*

---

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — Active Voice.

Exercise XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to guard.*
Dormiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to sleep.*
Erŭdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to instruct, refine, educate.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Audītis, audiebātis, audiētis. 3. Audio, audīmus. 4. Audiēbam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivīmus, audiverāmus, audiverĭmus. 7. Audīvi, audivĕram, audivĕro. 8. Audīvit, audivērunt. 9. Audiam, audīrem, audivĕrim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverĭmus, audivissēmus. 11. Audīto, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Active Voice.

Exercise XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invītat, admŏnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invītant, admŏnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavĕram, admonuĕram, duxĕram, audivĕram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavĕrim, admonuĕrim, duxĕrim, custodivĕrim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — Active Voice.
Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, *adv.*	*closely, soundly.*
Mūniŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to fortify.*
Sermŏ, sermōnĭs, *m.*	*discourse, conversation.*
Thrăsybūlŭs, ī, *m.*	*Thrasybulus*, Athenian general.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milites templum custodiunt. 4. Verum audītis. 5. Verum audīte. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audīmus. 8. Verba mea audivīsti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audīvi. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Pueri arcte dormiunt. 12. Pueri cantum lusciniae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybūlus urbem munīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiātur, audiantur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, audīti sumus. 5. Audīti erāmus, audītus eram. 6. Audītus erit, audīti erunt. 7. Audit, audītur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audīrem, audīrer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audīvit, audītus est. 14. Audivĕrat, audītus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Passive Voice.

Exercise XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educĕris, custodīris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educĭtur, custodītur. 4. Invitabĭtur, admonebĭtur, educētur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabātur, admonebātur, educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonĭtus sum, eductus sum, custodītus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonĭti erant, educti erant, custodīti erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonĭtus esses, custodītus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — Passive Voice. Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellŭm, ī, *n.*	*war.*
Bĕnignē, *adv.*	*kindly.*
Cīvilis, ĕ.	*civil.*

Egrĕgiē, *adv.*	*excellently.*
Fīliŭs, ii, *m.*	*son.*
Fīniŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to finish, bring to a close.*
Lēgātiŏ, lēgātiōnĭs, *f.*	*embassy.*
Vox, vōcĭs, *f.*	*voice.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vox audīta[1] est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus lusciniae audītur. 4. Cantus lusciniārum audiētur. 5. Urbs munīta erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Templa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audīta est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civīle finītum[1] est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.[2] 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Miscellaneous Examples.

Exercise XLVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēniensĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*an Athenian.*
Cănĭs, cănĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*dog.*
Cŏlŏ, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm,	*to practise, cultivate.*
Cŭm, *prep. with abl.*	*with.*

[1] Why *audīta* and *finītum*, instead of *audītus* and *finītus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

[2] *Let be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to strengthen.*
Grex, grĕgĭs, *m.*	*herd, flock.*
Illustrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to illumine.*
Jungŏ, jungĕrĕ, junxī, junctŭm,	*to join.*
Lăbŏr, lăbōrĭs, *m.*	*labor.*
Mŏdestiă, ae, *f.*	*modesty.*
Ovĭs, ŏvĭs, *f.*	*sheep.*
Portŭs, ūs, *m.*	*port, harbor.*
Prūdentiă, ae, *f.*	*prudence.*
Terră, ae, *f.*	*earth.*
Vălētūdŏ, vălētūdĭnĭs, *f.*	*health.*
Văriĕtās, văriĕtātĭs, *f.*	*variety.*
Viŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*violate.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia pŭeros ornat. 3. Discipŭli memoriam exercent. 4. Discipŭli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetudĭnem tuam firmābit. 9. Variĕtas nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always[1] be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who[2] led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

---

[1] For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

[2] Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quīs* or *quī?* See 188.

VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation; and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE.

214. Capio, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
căpĭŏ,	căpĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpĭŏ, căpĭs, căpĭt;	căpĭmŭs, căpĭtĭs, căpiunt.

IMPERFECT.

căpiēbăm, -iēbās, -iēbăt;	căpiēbāmŭs, -iēbātĭs, -iēbant.

FUTURE.

căpiăm, -iēs, -iĕt;	căpiēmŭs, -iētĭs, -ient.

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -ĭt;	cēpĭmŭs, -istĭs, -ērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpĕrăm, -ĕrās, -ĕrăt;	cēpĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēpĕrŏ, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

căpiăm, -iās, -iăt;	căpiāmŭs, -iātĭs, -iant.

IMPERFECT.

căpĕrĕm, -ĕrēs, -ĕrĕt;	căpĕrēmŭs, -ĕrētĭs, -ĕrent.

PERFECT.

cēpĕrĭm, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissĕm, -issēs, -issĕt;	cēpissēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent.

Imperative.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. căpĕ;	căpĭtĕ.
Fut. căpĭtō,	căpĭtōte,
căpĭtō;	căpiuntō.

Infinitive.

Pres. căpĕrĕ.	Pres. căpiens.
Perf. cēpissĕ.	
Fut. captūrŭs essĕ.	Fut. captūrŭs.

Gerund.

Gen. căpiendī.	
Dat. căpiendō.	
Acc. căpiendŭm.	*Acc.* captŭm.
Abl. căpiendō.	*Abl.* captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
căpiŏr,	căpī,	captŭs sŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiŏr, căpĕrĭs, căpĭtŭr;	căpĭmŭr, căpĭmĭnī, căpiuntŭr.

Imperfect.

căpiēbăr, -iēbārĭs, -iēbātŭr;	căpiēbāmŭr, -iēbāmĭnī, -iēbantŭr.

Future.

căpiăr, -iērĭs, -iētŭr;	căpiēmŭr, -iēmĭnī, -ientur.

Perfect.

captŭs sŭm, ĕs, est;	captī sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt.

Pluperfect.

captŭs ĕrăm, ĕrās, ĕrăt;	captī ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant.

Future Perfect.

captŭs ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt;	captī ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt.

Subjunctive.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiăr, -iārĭs, -iātŭr;	căpiāmŭr, -iāmĭnī, -iantŭr.

Imperfect.

căpĕrĕr, -ĕrērĭs, -ĕrĕtŭr;	căpĕrēmŭr, -ĕrēmĭnī, -ĕrentŭr.

Perfect.

captŭs sĭm, sīs, sĭt;	captī sīmŭs, sītĭs, sint.

Pluperfect.

captŭs essĕm, essēs, essĕt;	captī essēmŭs, essētĭs, essent.

Imperative.

Pres. căpĕrĕ;	căpĭmĭnī.
Fut. căpĭtŏr, căpĭtŏr;	căpiuntŏr.

Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres. căpī.	
Perf. captŭs essĕ.	Perf. captŭs.
Fut. captŭm īrī.	Fut. căpiendŭs.[1]

Exercise XLIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

A, ăb, *prep. with abl.*	*from, by.*
Accĭpiŏ, accĭpĕrĕ, accēpī, acceptŭm,	*to receive.*
Bellŭm, ī, *n.*	*war.*
Căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm,	*to take, capture.*
Carthāgŏ, Carthāgĭnĭs, *f.*	*Carthage*, city in Africa.
Cornēlĭŭs, iī, *m.*	*Cornelius*, a proper name.
Gallŭs, ī, *m.*	*Gaul, a Gaul.*[2]

[1] The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

[2] The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jăciŏ, jăcĕrĕ, jēcī, jactŭm,	*to cast, throw, hurl.*
Lăpis, lăpĭdis, *m.*	*stone.*
Lux, lūcis, *f.*	*light.*
Mūrŭs, ī, *m.*	*wall.*
Publĭŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*Publius*, a proper name.
Rēgŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*Regulus*, Roman general.
Tēlŭm, ī , *n.*	*javelin.*
Trōjă, ae, *f.*	*Troy*, city in Asia Minor.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta[1] est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regŭlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis[2] capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepĕrant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accĭpit. 13. Lucem a sole accipĭmus. 14. Tuam[3] epistōlam accēpi. 15. Milĭtes tela jaciēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who[4] took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not[5] received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

---

[1] For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

[2] See Rule XXXII., page 24.

[3] What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

[4] Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quĭs* or *quī?* See 188.

[5] Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their structure, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound:*

I. A Simple Sentence expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A Complex Sentence expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnec ĕris fēlix, multos nŭmĕrābis ămīcos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. Clauses. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous,*" and (2) "*You will number many friends,*" are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends,* (when?) *so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members.*

III. A Compound Sentence expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their use, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory.*

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiădes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extĭmescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num:*

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scrībitne,* Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes: Nonne scrībit,* Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no: Num scrībit,* Is he writing?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Cultivate justice.* Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation:

Rĕlīquit quos vĭros, *What heroes he has left!* Cic.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *morĭtur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers:

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mŏrĭtur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex,* is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris morĭtur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. Principal and Subordinate. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. Simple and Complex. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.[1]

Simple Subject.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

Rex[2] dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*[2] ad te scrībo, *I write to you.* Cic.

Simple Predicate.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiădes est accūsātus,[3] *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. Tu es testis, *You are a witness.* Cic. Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective.*[4]

---

[1] Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius;* the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex;* the simple predicate, *morĭtur;* the complex, *in his castris morĭtur.*

[2] In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

[3] In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accusātus;* in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis;* and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est.*

[4] Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective.*

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.[1]

362. A Predicate Noun[2] denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,[2] *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

Exercise L.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amnĭs, amnĭs, *m.*	*river.*
Creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to create, make, elect.*
Graeciă, ae, *f.*	*Greece.*
Impĕrātŏr, impĕrātōrĭs, *m.*	*commander.*
Lătīnŭs, ī, *m.*	*Latinus*, Italian king.
Lāvīniă, ae, *f.*	*Lavinia*, a proper name.
Mălŭm, ī, *n.*	*evil.*
Nōmĭnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to call, name.*
Nŭmă, ae, *m.*	*Numa*, Roman king.
Rhēnŭs, ī, *m.*	*the Rhine*, river in Europe.
Serviŭs, iī, *m.*	*Servius*, Roman king.
Stultĭtiă, ae, *f.*	*folly.*
Tŭm, *adv.*	*then, at that time.*

[1] In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

[2] See 353, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *consul*[1] fuit.[2] 2. Cicĕro *orātor* fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum[3] erat[2] *orātor* clarissĭmus.[4] 4. Puer *orātor* erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex[1] creātus est. 7. Cato imperātor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperātor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creātus est. 10. Scipio consul fuĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtūtis. 13. Graecia artium[5] mater nominātur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive[6] agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex[6] mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Urbes Carthāgo[6] atque Nŭmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

---

[1] Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

[2] For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

[3] Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

[4] See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

[5] *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 22.

[6] See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex, Carthāgo,* and *Numantia* are all Predicate Nouns.

Exercise LI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alexanděr, Alexandrī, *m.*	*Alexander*, the Great.
Conjux, conjŭgĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*wife, husband.*
Epīrŭs, ī, *f.*	*Epirus*, country in Greece.
Erŭdītŭs, ă, ŭm,	*learned, instructed in.*
Hannŏ, Hannōnĭs, *m.*	*Hanno*, Carthaginian general.
Justŭs, ă, ŭm,	*just, upright.*
Măcĕdŏnĭă, ae, *f.*	*Macedonia, Macedon.*
Nĕpōs, nĕpōtĭs, *m.*	*grandson.*
Paulŭs, ī, *m.*	*Paulus*, Roman consul.
Philippŭs, ī, *m.*	*Philip*, king of Macedon.
Pyrrhŭs, ī, *m.*	*Phyrrhus*, king of Epirus.
Vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to wound.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro, eruditissĭmus *homo*,[1] consul[2] fuit. 2. Numa, justissĭmus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,[1] rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.[3] 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulnerātus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superāvit. 7. Paulus consul[1] regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonārum artium, nos erŭdit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia, *the daughter*[1] of Servius, was the wife[2] of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

---

[1] Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

[2] Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

[3] See 214.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. Cases. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I.	Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II.	Vocative,	Case of Address.
III.	Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV.	Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V.	Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI.	Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations.[1]

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pătent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. Subject Omitted. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

Exercise LII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Lībertās, lībertātĭs, *f.*	*liberty.*
Opŭlentŭs, ă, ŭm,	*rich, opulent.*
Quŏtidiē, *adv.*	*daily.*
Vĭtiŭm, ĭi, *n.*	*fault, vice.*
Oppĭdum, ī, *n.*	*town, city.*

[1] This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*[1] liberāta[2] est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissĭma liberabĭtur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissĭma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudātur. 6. Virtūtes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudāta. 8. Libertas semper laudabĭtur. 9. Omnia hostium oppīda expugnāta sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV. — Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli,[3] *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. Quid est, Cătīlīna,[3] *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi,[3] regnum. *The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv.

Exercise LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditŏr, auditōrĭs, *m.*	*hearer, auditor.*
Cārŭs, ă, ŭm,	*dear.*
Jŭvĕnĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*a youth, young man.*
Lēgātŭs, ī, *m.*	*ambassador.*
Sălūtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to salute.*

[1] Subject of *liberāta est.* See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

[2] Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus?* See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

[3] *Laeli, Catilīna,* and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie;* and *Servi,* for *Servie.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,[1] salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*[1] carissĭmi,[2] salūto. 3. Vos, *auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judĭces*, audīte. 5. Haec verba, legāti, audīte. 6. Vos, milĭtes, hanc urbem clarissĭmam custodīte. 7. Milĭtes[1] fortissĭmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtūtem, juvĕnes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,[1] hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object[3] of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.*[4] Cic. Lĭbĕra rem publĭcam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pŏpŭli Rōmāni sălūtem dēfendīte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

---

[1] In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

[2] See 162.

[3] See *note* on Direct Object, p. 70.

[4] See *note* on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

Exercise LIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Flāmĭnĭŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*Flaminius*, Roman general.
Marcellŭs, ī, *m.*	*Marcellus*, Roman general.
Poenŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Carthaginian.*
Poenus, ī, *m.*	*a Carthaginian.*
Sanctŭs, ă, ŭm,	*holy, sacred.*
Sĭcĭlĭă, ae, *f.*	*Sicily*, the island of.
Spŏlĭŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to rob, spoil, despoil.*
Sўrācūsae, ārŭm, *f. plur.*	*Syracuse*, city in Sicily.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Alexander multas *urbes*[1] expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissĭma spoliavērunt. 5. Hannĭbal Flaminium[1] consŭlem[2] superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavĕrant. 7. Marcellus[3] magnam hujus insŭlae[4] partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,[1] nobilissĭmam urbem,[2] expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not[5] love your *parents?*[1] 2. We love our *parents.* 3. You practise *virtue.* 4. Our pupils will practise virtue. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy[6] taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

---

[1] Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

[2] Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

[3] Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

[4] *Hujus insŭlae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

[5] See 346, II. 1.

[6] The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. Duration of Time, and Extent of Space, are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmŭlus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos,[1] *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pĕdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pĕdes[1] alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

Exercise LV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aggĕr, aggĕrĭs, *m.*	*mound, rampart.*
Ambŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to walk.*
Centŭm,	*hundred.*
Glădiŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*sword.*
Lăcĕdaemŏniŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.*
Lātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*broad, wide.*
Longŭs, ă, ŭm,	*long.*
Mensĭs, mensĭs, *m.*	*month.*
Nox, noctĭs, *f.*	*night.*
Octōgintā,	*eighty.*
Pēs, pĕdĭs, *m.*	*foot.*
Quinquāgintā,	*fifty.*
Regnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to reign.*
Vĭgĭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to watch, be awake.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex *annos*[2] servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis *partem*[2] vigilavĕram. 3. Puer octo *horas*

[1] *Annos* denotes *Duration of Time*, while *millia* and *pedes* denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

[2] In the Accusative denoting Duration of Time. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormīvit. 4. Latīnus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italiā sex menses fuĭmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuĭmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes[1] latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did you not walk two *hours?* 2. We walked three *hours.* 3. Did you not sleep six *hours?* 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rĕdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plăto Tărentum[2] vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquĭnios,[2] *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

Exercise LVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēnae, ārŭm, *f. plur.*	*Athens*, capital of Attica.
Fŭgiŏ, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm,	*to flee, fly, run away.*
Lўsandĕr, Lўsandrī, *m.*	*Lysander*, Spartan general.
Miltiādēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Miltiades*, Athenian general.
Nāvĭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to sail, sail to.*

[1] In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space.*

[2] *Romam, Tarentum,* and *Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion;* i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rĕdūcŏ, rĕdūcĕrĕ, rĕdūxī, rĕductŭm,	*to lead back.*
Rĕvŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to recall.*
Spartă, ae, *f.*	*Sparta*, capital of Laconia.
Tărentŭm, ī, *n.*	*Tarentum*, Italian town.
Thēbānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Theban.*
Thēbānŭs, ī, *m.*	*a Theban.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *Romam*[1] revocātus est. 2. Consŭles *Romam* revocāti sunt. 3. Hannĭbal *Carthagĭnem*[1] revocātus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*[1] navigāvit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit. 7. Thebāni exercĭtum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiădes exercĭtum Athēnas reduxit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who fled *to Carthage?*[2] 2. Did not the enemy flee *to Carthage?* 3. They fled *to Carthage.* 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?[2] 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

I. With Verbs.
II. With Adjectives.
III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. Indirect Object. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

[1] In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

[2] The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII. — Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempŏri[1] cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi tĭmuĕrant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lăbōri stŭdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis[1] vīta dăta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nŭmĭtōri dēdĭtur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Pons ĭter hostĭbus[2] dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges cīvĭtātĭbus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĕ,	*Carthaginian.*
Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*a Carthaginian.*
Cŏnŏn, Cŏnōnĭs, *m.*	*Conon*, Athenian gen'l.
Dēbeŏ, dēbērĕ, dēbuī, dēbĭtŭm,	*to owe.*
Displĭceŏ, displĭcērĕ, displĭcuī, displĭcĭtŭm,	*to displease.*
Dōnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to give.*
Gens, gentĭs, *f.*	*race.*
Grātĭă, ae, *f.*	*favor, gratitude, thanks.*
Lăbōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to strive for.*

[1] *Tempŏri, sibi,* and *labōri* are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit, timuĕrant* (intransitive here), and *student;* while *nobis* and *Numitōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *dedĭtur.*

[2] *Hostĭbus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter,* with the Transitive verb *dedit.* In the same way, *civitatĭbus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges,* with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt.*

Monstrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to show, point out.*
Plăcĕŏ, plăcērĕ, plăcuī, plăcĭtŭm,	*to please.*
Sĕnectūs, sĕnectūtĭs, *f.*	*old age.*
Sententiă, ae, *f.*	*opinion.*
Serviŏ, servīrĕ, servīvī, servītŭm,	*to serve.*
Viă, ae, *f.*	*way, road.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives *legĭbus*[1] parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitātes *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesări*[1] placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesări* displicuit. 5. Milĭtes gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium Caesări nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostĭbus nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*[2] magnam *gratiam* habēmus. 9. Habeo *senectūti* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civĭbus donāvit. 11. Pastor puĕro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensĭbus bellum indixērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did I not obey my[3] *father?*[1] 2. You obeyed your *father*. 3. We will obey *the laws* of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve *the king?* 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell *me* (to me[4]) *the truth?*[5] 9. I have told *you* (to you) *the truth*. 10. Will you show

---

[1] Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

[2] Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

[3] In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

[4] Dative. See Rule XII. II.

[5] Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way. 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13. They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV. — Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae sōlum omnībus[1] cārum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. Id aptum est tempŏri, *This is adapted to the time.* Cic. Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, *Death is common to every age.* Cic. Cānis sīmĭlis lŭpo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. Nātūrae accommŏdātum, *Adapted to nature.* Cic. Graeciae ūtĭle, *Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE. — The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amīcŭs, a, ŭm,	*friendly.*
Hispāniă, ae, *f.*	*Spain.*
Multĭtūdŏ, multĭtūdĭnis, *f.*	*multitude.*
Săguntŭm, ī, *n.*	*Saguntum*, city in Spain.
Sīmĭlis, ĕ,	*like.*
Sōlŭm, ī, *n.*	*soil.*
Vērĭtās, vērĭtātis, *f.*	*verity, truth.*

[1] Dative, showing *to whom* the soil is *dear*, — *dear* TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempŏri* is used with *aptum*, *aetāti* with *commūnis*, *lupo* with *simĭlis*, *natūrae* with *accommodātum*, and *Graeciae* with *ūtĭle*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*[1] cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est. 3. Patria *tibi*[1] erit carissĭma. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum est. 5. Hannĭbal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romānis grata fuit. 7. Libertas multitudĭni grata est. 8. Verĭtas nobis gratissĭma est. 9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10. Saguntum Romānis amīcum fuit. 11. Hannĭbal Saguntum,[2] Hispaniae civitātem[3] Romānis[4] amīcam,[5] expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you?* 2. They are useful *to us.* 3. They will be useful *to you.* 4. This law has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be acceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me. 7. This book will be most acceptable[6] to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause;* but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

---

[1] Dative, according to Rule XIV.

[2] Accusative. See Rule V.

[3] Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

[4] Dative with *amīcam*. See Rule XIV.

[5] *Amīcam* agrees with *civitātem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

[6] See 162.

Cătōnis[1] ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hămilcăris, *The death of Hamilcar.* Liv. See 363.

Exercise LIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Commūnĭs, ĕ,	*common.*
Conscientiă, ae, *f.*	*consciousness.*
Dulcĭs, ĕ,	*sweet, pleasant.*
Hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, *m.*	*honor.*
Orbĭs, orbĭs, *m.*	*circle, world.*
Orbĭs terrārŭm,[2]	*the world.*
Parvŭs, ă, ŭm,	*small.*
Princĭpiŭm, ii, *n.*	*beginning.*
Rectŭm, ī, *n.*	*rectitude, right.*
Sōcrătēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Socrates*, Athenian philosopher.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Justitia *virtūtum*[3] regīna est. 2. Sapientia est mater omnium bonārum *artium.* 3. Socrātes parens *philosophiae* fuit. 4. Virtus veri *honōris*[4] mater est. 5. Patria commūnis[5] est omnium nostrum[6] parens. 6. Roma orbis[7] terrārum caput fuit. 7. Omnium rerum principia parva sunt. 8. Conscientia recti est praemium virtūtis dulcissĭmum.

---

[1] *Catōnis* qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

[2] Literally *the circle of lands.*

[3] Genitive, depending upon *regīna.* Rule XVI.

[4] Genitive, depending upon *mater.*

[5] *Commūnis* agrees with *parens.* See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

[6] Genitive, depending upon *parens.*

[7] *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārum* upon *orbis.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations *of Cicero* are praised. 2. The courage *of the soldiers* saved the city. 3. The crown *of the king* was golden. 4. The sword of the general was beautiful. 5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state. 6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII. — Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avĭdus laudis,[1] *Desirous of praise.* Cic. Otii cŭpĭdus, *Desirous of leisure.* Liv. Amans sui virtus, *Virtue fond of itself.* Cic. Efficiens vŏluptātis, *Productive of pleasure.* Cic. Glōriae mĕmor, *Mindful of glory.* Liv.

1. Force of this Genitive. — The genitive here retains its usual force, — *of, in respect of,* — and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. Adjectives with the Genitive. — The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness,* and their contraries.

Exercise LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amans, ămantĭs,	*loving, fond of.*
Avĭdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*desirous of, eager for.*

[1] *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avĭdus; desirous* (of what?) *of praise.* It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupĭdus; sui,* of *amans; voluptātis,* of *efficiens;* and *gloriae,* of *memor.*

Certāmĕn, certāmĭnĭs, *n.*	*contest, strife, battle.*
Cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*desirous of.*
Fons, fontĭs, *m.*	*fountain.*
Laus, laudĭs, *f.*	*praise.*
Nŏvĭtās, nŏvĭtātĭs, *f.*	*novelty.*
Pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm,	*skilled in.*
Piscĭs, piscĭs, *m.*	*fish.*
Plēnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*full.*
Vŏluptās, vŏluptātĭs, *f.*	*pleasure.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Romāni avĭdi *gloriae*[1] fuērunt. 2. Homĭnes *novitātis* avĭdi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*[1] erat amantissĭmus.[2] 4. *Patriae* amantissĭmi sumus. 5. Consul gloriae cupĭdus erat. 6. Cicĕro gloriae cupidissĭmus[2] fuit. 7. Milĭtes erant avidissĭmi certamĭnis. 8. Fons piscium plenissĭmus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissĭmi fuērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Boys are fond *of praise.* 2. Are you not fond *of praise?* 3. We are fond *of praise.* 4. Were not the Athenians fond of pleasure? 5. They were always fond of pleasure. 6. They are desirous of glory. 7. Are you not desirous of a victory? 8. We are desirous of a victory.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

[1] Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

[2] See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI. — Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means[1] are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars ūtĭlĭtāte laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. Glōriā dūcĭtur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duōbus mŏdis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Apri dentĭbus se tūtantur, *Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. Aeger ĕrat vulnĕrĭbus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. Application of Rule. — This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. Ablative of Cause. — This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which,* any thing is or is done.

3. Ablative of Manner. — This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum;* but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner,* — *mōre, ordĭne, rătiōne,* etc., — occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *With the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persārum, *In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum sĭlentio audīre, *To hear in silence.* Liv. Id ordĭne făcĕre, *To do it in order,* or *properly.* Cic.

---

[1] It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner,* and *Means.* Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means,* or both *Means* and *Manner.* Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness; *glorĭā,* means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause; *modis,* manner; *luce,* means; *dentĭbus,* means; *vulnerĭbus,* cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means; and *sorte,* cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab:*

Occīsus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.*[1] Nep.

EXERCISE LXI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mūnŭs, mūnĕrĭs, *n.*	*reward, gift.*
Nātūră, ae, *f.*	*nature.*
Pellĭs, pellĭs, *f.*	*skin, hide.*
Quŏtĭdiānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*daily.*
Scўthae, ārum, *m. plur.*	*Scythians.*
Triumphŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to triumph.*
Usŭs, ūs, *m.*	*use.*
Vestiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to clothe.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Consul *virtūte*[2] laudātus est. 2. Urbs *natūrā*[3] munīta erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Munerĭbus*[3] delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli virtūte est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā[4] triumphāvit.[5] 9. Scythae corpŏra pellĭbus vestiēbant.

[1] By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the *person by whom* any thing is done from the *means by which* it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thebānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

[2] Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

[3] Ablative of Means.

[4] Ablative of Manner.

[5] The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers?*[1] 2. The fields are adorned *with* beautiful *flowers.* 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use?* 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.[2] 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est āmābĭlius virtūte,[3] *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.
Quid est mĕlius bŏnĭtāte,[3] *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM[4] are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hĭbernia mĭnor quam Brĭtannia existĭmātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi[5] terrĭbĭlior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

---

[1] Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

[2] Ablative of Cause.

[3] *Virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilius*, and the latter after the comparative *melius.*

[4] *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than.* Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

[5] *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after* quam, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

Exercise LXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Argentŭm, ī. *n.*	*silver.*
Āvārĭtiă ae. *f.*	*avarice.*
Bŏnĭtās, bŏnĭtātĭs, *f.*	*goodness, excellence.*
Elŏquens, ēlŏquentĭs,	*eloquent.*
Ferrŭm, ī, *n.*	*iron.*
Foedŭs, ă, ŭm,	*detestable.*
Prĕtĭōsŭs, ă, ŭm,	*valuable.*
Quăm, *conj.*	*than.*
Scientiă, ae, *f.*	*knowledge.*
Turrĭs, turrĭs, *f.*	*tower.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Virtus mihi [1] *gloriā* [2] est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* [2] meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā?* 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā?* 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anĭmus corpŏre est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.[3] 8. Quid multitudĭni [1] gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.[4] 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthĕnes?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron.*[2] 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold.* 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money.* 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than [5] knowledge. 7. Good-

---

[1] See Rule XIV. 391.

[2] Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

[3] In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

[4] Subject of *es* understood.

[5] In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation.*

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive:

I. Hannĭbal in Itălĭā[1] fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps.* Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way.* Cic. Ab urbe prŏfĭcĭscĭtur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis[2] fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Bābўlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon.* Cic. Fūgit Cŏrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cic. Rōmae[2] fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

A, ăb, *prep. with abl.*	*from, by.*
Bābўlōn, Bābўlōnĭs, *f.*	*Babylon*, the city of.

[1] *In Italiā, in castris,* and *in viā* designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while *ab urbe* and *ex Africā* designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

[2] *Athēnis, Babylōne,* and *Corintho,* being names of towns, omit the preposition; while *Romae,* also the name of a town, is in the Genitive, as it is in the Singular of the First declension.

Cŏrinthŭs, ī, *f.*	*Corinth*, city in Greece.
Diŏnȳsiŭs, ii, *m.*	*Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
Hăbĭtō, āre, āvī, ātŭm,	*to dwell, reside.*
Hortŭs, ī, *m.*	*garden.*
Laetĭtiă, ae, *f.*	*joy.*
Lūcŭs, ī, *m.*	*grove.*
Rĕgiŏ, rĕgiōnĭs, *f.*	*region, territory.*
Sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrĭs, *m.*	*senator.*
Trīgintā,	*thirty.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hannĭbal *in Hispaniā*[1] fuit. 2. Latīnus *in Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latīnus in illis regionĭbus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe[2] fugiēbant. 5. Themistŏcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses[3] *Athēnis*[4] fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistŏcles Athēnis fugit. 10. Athēnis habitābat. 11. Romŭlus *Romae*[5] regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not your father *in Italy?* 2. My father is *in Greece.* 3. Were you not in Greece? 4. We resided in Greece three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years *at Athens.* 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter *at Rome?* 13. I received your letter at Corinth.

---

[1] Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

[2] Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

[3] See Rule VIII.

[4] In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

[5] In the Genitive, because it is the name of a *town*, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsĭmo anno[1] est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnēre, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hiĕme et aestāte, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.— Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mĕmŏriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Brūtus, ī, *m.*	*Brutus*, a Roman patriot.
Dēflăgrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to burn, be consumed.*
Diānă, ae, *f.*	*Diana*, a goddess.
Ephĕsiŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
Hiems, hiĕmĭs, *f.*	*winter.*
Nātālis, ĕ,	*belonging to one's birth, natal.*
Nātālis diēs,	*birth-day.*
Pompēiŭs, ī, *m.*	*Pompey*, Roman general.
Persae, ārŭm, *m. plur.*	*Persians.*
Scrībŏ, scrībĕrĕ, scrīpsī, scrīptŭm,	*to write.*
Tempŭs, tempŏrĭs, *n.*	*time.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Natāli *die*[2] tuo scripsisti epistŏlam. 2. Eōdem *die* epistŏlam tuam accēpi.[3] 3. Pompēius urbem tertio *mense*

---

[1] *Anno, vere, die, hiĕme*, and *aestāte* are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

[2] Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

[3] From *accipio*.

cepit. 4. Eōdem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempŏre miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens[1] *at* that *time?* 2. We were at Corinth[2] *at* that *time.* 3. Do you not reside in the city[1] *in winter?* 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome[2] on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad ămīcum[3] scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house.* Liv. In Itāliā, *In Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp.*

433. The Accusative is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, ăpud, circa, circum, circĭter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pĕnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prŏpe, propter, sĕcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods.* Cic.

434. The Ablative is used with

A *or* ab (abs), absque, cōram, cum, de,
e *or* ex, prae, pro, sĭne, tĕnus:

[1] Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

[2] Genitive of Place. See Rule XXVI. II.

[3] The Accusative *amīcum* is here used with the preposition *ad; curiam,* with *in;* the Ablative *Italiā,* with *in.* See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The Accusative or Ablative is used with

In, sub, subter, sŭper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannĭbal in Itălĭā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where:* In Asiam, (whither?) *into Asia;* In Itălĭā, (where?) *in Italy.*

Exercise LXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adversŭs, *prep. with acc.*	*against.*
Dīmĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to fight.*
Pĕr, *prep. with acc.*	*of, through.*
Prospĕrē, *adv.*	*successfully.*
Prōvŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to challenge.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospĕre pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Verĭtas per se[1] mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabĭlis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*[2] superāti sunt. 7. Cicĕro de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city?* 2. It has been led back to *the city.* 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me?* 7. I have received four letters from *you.* 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

---

[1] *Per se,* literally *through itself:* render *in itself* or *of itself.*

[2] *A Graecis,* by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. The preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

Meaning of the Latin.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense,* etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa,* a table, but not of *mensārum,* of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum.*

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns,* which *verbs,* etc.

2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense,* etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *io* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus mensĭbus; stem *mens*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So urbem, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus amābat; stem *am*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So amavērunt; First Pers. Perf. amāvi, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *am*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistŏcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistŏcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistŏcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: THEMISTOCLES.

2) That *lĭbĕro*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means *to liberate:* LIBERATED.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander:* THE COMMANDER.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: GREECE.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all:* ALL.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servĭtus* means *servitude:* FROM SERVITUDE.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*[1] it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.[2] In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.

2. Inflect[3] it, if capable of inflection.

3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.[4]

4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.[5]

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

---

[1] It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

[2] These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

[3] Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

[4] That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

[5] For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 24, 33, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.

A.

A, ăb, *prep. with abl. From, by.*
Accĭpiŏ, accĭpĕrĕ, accēpī, acceptŭm. *To receive.*
Acĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ. *Sharp, severe, valiant.*
Aciēs, ăciēī, *f. Order of battle, battle-array, army.*
Ad, *prep. with acc. To, towards, near.*
Admĭnistrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To administer, manage.*
Admŏneŏ, admŏnērĕ, admŏnuī, admŏnĭtŭm. *To admonish.*
Adventŭs, ūs, *m. Arrival, approach.*
Adversŭs, *prep. with acc. Against.*
Aedĭfĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To build.*
Aestās, aestātĭs, *f. Summer.*
Agĕr, ăgrī, *m. Field, land.*
Aggĕr, aggĕrĭs, *m. Mound, rampart.*
Agĭs, Agĭdĭs, *m. Agis,* a king of Sparta.
Albānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Alban.*
Alexanděr, Alexandrī, *m. Alexander,* the Great.
Alĭquĭs, ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd or ălĭquŏd. *Some, some one.* See 191.
Altŭs, ă, ŭm. *High, lofty.*
Amans, ămantĭs. *Loving, fond of.*
Ambŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To walk.*
Amīcĭtiă, ae, *f. Friendship.*
Amīcŭs, ă, ŭm. *Friendly.*
Amīcŭs, ī, *m. Friend.*
Amnĭs, amnĭs, *m. River.*
Amŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To love.*
Amŏr, amōrĭs, *m. Love.*
Ampliŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To enlarge.*
Ancŭs, ī, *m. Ancus,* a Roman king.
Anĭmăl, ănĭmālĭs, *n. Animal.*
Anĭmŭs, ī, *m. Soul, mind, passion, disposition.*
Annŭlŭs, ī, *m. Ring.*
Annŭs, ī, *m. Year.*
Antĕ, *prep. with acc. Before.*
Antīquŭs, ă, ŭm. *Ancient.*
Apĭs, ăpĭs, *f. Bee.*
Appellŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To call.*
Appĕtens, appĕtentĭs. *Desiring, striving for.*
Apŭd, *prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.*
Apūliă, ae, *f. Apulia,* a country in Italy.
Arabs, Arăbĭs, *m* and *f. Arab, an Arab.*
Arctē, *adv. Closely, soundly.*
Argentŭm, ī, *n. Silver.*
Arŏ, ărārĕ, ărāvī, ărātŭm. *To plough.*

Arrŏgantiă, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*
Ars, artĭs, *f.* *Art, skill.*
Artăxerxēs, ĭs, *m.* *Artaxerxes,* a Persian king.
Arx, arcĭs, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*
Athēnae, ārŭm, *f. plur.* *Athens,* the capital of Attica.
Athēnĭensĭs, ĕ. *Athenian.*
Athēniensĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*
Attĭcŭs, ī, *m.* *Atticus,* a Roman name.
Audiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To hear.*
Audĭtŏr, audĭtōrĭs, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*
Aurĕŭs, ă, ŭm. *Golden.*
Aurŭm, ī, n. *Gold.*
Avārĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*
Avĭdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Desirous of, eager for.*
Avĭs, ăvĭs, *f.* *Bird.*

B.

Bābўlōn, Bābўlōnĭs, *f.* *Babylon,* the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.
Beātŭs, ă, ŭm. *Happy, blessed.*
Bellŭm, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*
Bĕnĕ, *adv.* *Well.*
Bĕnignē, *adv.* *Kindly.*
Bŏnĭtās, bŏnĭtātĭs, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*
Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Good.*
Brĕvĭs, ĕ. *Short, brief.*
Brūtŭs, ī, *m.* *Brutus,* a celebrated Roman patriot.

C.

Caesăr, Caesărĭs, *m.* *Cæsar,* a celebrated Roman commander.
Cāiŭs, iī, *m.* *Caius,* a proper name.
Cămillŭs, ī, *m.* *Camillus,* a Roman general.
Campŭs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*
Cănĭs, cănĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Dog.*
Cantŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To sing.*
Cantŭs, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*
Căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm. *To take, capture.*
Căpŭt, căpĭtĭs, *n.* *Head, capital.*
Carmĕn, carmĭnĭs, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*
Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĕ. *Carthaginian.*
Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.* *A Carthaginian.*
Carthāgŏ, Carthāgĭnĭs, *f.* *Carthage,* a city of Northern Africa.
Carthāgŏ Nŏvă. *New Carthage, Carthagena,* a city of Spain.
Cārŭs, ă, ŭm. *Dear.*
Cătŏ, Cătōnĭs, *m.* *Cato,* a distinguished Roman.
Centŭm. *One hundred.* See 175, 2.
Certāmĕn, certāmĭnĭs, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*
Cĭbŭs, ī, *m.* *Food.*
Cĭcĕrŏ, Cĭcĕrōnĭs, *m.* *Cicero,* the celebrated Roman orator.
Cīvĭlĭs, ĕ. *Civil.*
Cīvĭs, cīvĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Citizen.*
Cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātĭs, *f.* *State, city.*
Clārŭs, ă, ŭm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*
Classĭs, classĭs, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*
Coerceŏ, coercērĕ, coercuī, coercĭtŭm. *To check.*
Cŏlŏ, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm. *To practise, cultivate.*
Commūnĭs ĕ. *Common.*
Condemnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To condemn.*
Condĭtŏr, condĭtōrĭs, *m.* *Founder.*
Conjux, conjŭgĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

Cŏnōn, Cŏnōnĭs, *m.* *Conon*, an Athenian general.
Conscientiă, ae, *f.* *Consciousness.*
Consĭlĭŭm, ĭī, *n.* *Design, plan.*
Conspectŭs, ūs, *m.* *Sight, view, presence.*
Consŭl, consŭlĭs, *m.* *Consul.*
Contrā, *prep. with acc.* *Against, opposite to, contrary to.*
Convŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To assemble, call together.*
Cŏrinthŭs, ī, *f.* *Corinth*, city in Greece.
Cornēlĭŭs, ĭī, *m.* *Cornelius*, a Roman name.
Cŏrōnă, ae, *f.* *Crown.*
Corpŭs, corpŏrĭs, *n.* *Body, person.*
Creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To create, make, appoint, elect.*
Crūdēlĭs, ĕ. *Cruel.*
Crūdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Unripe.*
Culpŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To blame.*
Cŭm, *prep. with abl.* *With.*
Cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Desirous of.*
Cŭrēs, Cŭrĭŭm, *m. plur.* *Cures*, a Sabine town.
Custōdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To guard.*
Custōs, custōdĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Keeper, guard.*

D.

Dē, *prep. with abl.* *Concerning.*
Dēbĕŏ, dēbērĕ, dēbuī, dēbĭtŭm. *To owe.*
Dĕcĕm. *Ten.* See 175.
Dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm. *Tenth.*
Dēfectiŏ, dēfectiōnĭs, *f.* *Eclipse.*
Dēflăgrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To burn, be consumed.*
Dēlectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To delight, please.*
Dēmărātŭs, ī, *m.* *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.
Dēmosthĕnēs, ĭs, *m.* *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.
Diānă, ae, *f.* *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.
Dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm. *To say, speak, tell.*
Dĭēs, dĭēī, *m.* *Day.* See 119, note.
Dīlĭgens, dīlĭgentĭs. *Diligent.*
Dīlĭgentiă, ae, *f.* *Diligence.*
Dīmĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To fight.*
Dĭŏnȳsĭŭs, ĭī, *m.* *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
Discĭpŭlŭs, ī, *m.* *Pupil.*
Dĭsertē, *adv.* *Clearly, eloquently.*
Displĭceŏ, displĭcērĕ, displĭcuī, displĭcĭtŭm. *To displease.*
Dīvīnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Divine.*
Dŏlŏr, dŏlōrĭs, *m.* *Pain, grief, suffering.*
Dōnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To give, present.*
Dōnŭm, ī, *n.* *Gift.*
Dormiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To sleep.*
Drăcŏ, Drăcōnĭs, *m.* *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.
Dŭcentī, ae, ă. *Two hundred.*
Dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm. *To lead.*
Dulcĭs, ĕ. *Sweet, pleasant.*
Duŏ, ae, ŏ. *Two.* See 176.
Dŭplĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To double, increase.*
Dux, dŭcĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Leader, general.*

E.

E, ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*
Ebrĭĕtās, ēbrĭĕtātĭs, *f.* *Drunkenness.*
Edūcŏ, ēdūcĕrĕ, ēduxī, ēductum. *To lead forth, lead out.*
Effŭgiŏ, effŭgĕrĕ, effūgī, effŭgĭtŭm. *To escape.*
Egŏ, meī. *I.* See 184.

Egrĕgiŭs, ă, ŭm. *Distinguished.*
Egrĕgiē, *adv.* *Excellently.*
Elĕphantŭs, ī, *m.* *Elephant.*
Elŏquens, ēlŏquentĭs. *Eloquent.*
Elŏquentiă, ae, *f.* *Eloquence.*
Ephĕsiŭs, ă, ŭm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
Epīrŭs, ī, *f.* *Epirus,* a country in Greece.
Epistŏlă, ae, *f.* *Letter.*
Erŭdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To instruct, refine, educate.*
Erŭdītŭs, ă, ŭm. *Learned, instructed in.*
Ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*
Exerceŏ, exercērĕ, exercuī, exercĭtŭm. *To exercise, train.*
Exercĭtŭs, ūs, *m.* *Army.*
Expugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To take, take by storm.*
Exspectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To await, expect.*
Exsŭl, exsŭlĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Exile.*

F.

Făciēs, făciēī, *f.* *Face, appearance.*
Ferrŭm, ī, *n.* *Iron.*
Fertĭlĭs, ĕ. *Fertile.*
Fĭdēlĭtās, fĭdēlĭtātĭs, *f.* *Fidelity, faithfulness.*
Fĭdēs, fĭdeī, *f.* *Faith, fidelity.*
Fĭdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Faithful.*
Fīliă, ae, *f.* *Daughter.*
Fīliŭs, īī, *m.* *Son.*
Fīniŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To finish, bring to a close.*
Fīnīs, fīnĭs, *m.* *Limit, territory.*
Firmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To strengthen, confirm.*
Flāmĭniŭs, īī, *m.* *Flaminius,* a Roman general.
Flōs, flōrĭs, *m.* *Flower.*
Foedŭs, ă, ŭm. *Detestable.*
Fons, fontĭs, *m.* *Fountain.*
Fortĭs, ĕ. *Brave.*
Fortĭtĕr, *adv.* *Bravely.*
Fortĭtūdŏ, fortĭtūdĭnĭs, *f.* *Bravery, fortitude.*
Fossă, ae, *f.* *Ditch, moat.*
Frātĕr, frātrĭs, *m.* *Brother.*
Fructŭs, ūs, *m.* *Fruit, produce, income.*
Frūmentŭm, ī, *n.* *Corn, grain.*
Fŭgă, ae, *f.* *Flight.*
Fŭgiŏ, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm. *To flee, fly, run away.*
Fŭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To rout, drive away.*
Fūnestŭs, ă, ŭm. *Destructive.*
Fŭrŏr, fŭrōrĭs, *m.* *Madness, insanity.*

G.

Gallŭs, ī, *m.* *Gallus,* a proper name.
Gallŭs, ī, *m.* *Gaul, a Gaul,* an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.
Gemmă, ae, *f.* *Gem.*
Gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, *m.* *Son-in-law.*
Gens, gentĭs, *f.* *Race.*
Germāniă, ae, *f.* *Germany.*
Glădiŭs, īī, *m.* *Sword.*
Glŏbōsŭs, ă, ŭm. *Spherical.*
Glōriă, ae, *f.* *Glory.*
Graeciă, ae, *f.* *Greece.*
Graecŭs, ă, ŭm. *Grecian, Greek.*
Graecŭs, ī, *m.* *Greek, a Greek.*
Grātiă, ae, *f.* *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*
Grātŭs, ă, ŭm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*
Grex, grĕgĭs, *m.* *Herd, flock.*

H.

Hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm. *To have, hold.*
Hăbĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannĭbăl, Hannĭbălĭs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.
Hannŏ, Hannōnĭs, *m.* *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.
Hastă, ae, *f.* *Spear.*
Hīc, haec, hŏc. *This.*
Hiems, hiĕmīs, *f.* *Winter.*
Hirundŏ, hirundĭnĭs, *f.* *Swallow.*
Hispāniă, ae, *f.* *Spain.*
Hispānŭs, ī, *m.* *A Spaniard.*
Hŏmērŭs, ī, *m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.
Hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs, *m.* *Man.*
Hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, *m.* *Honor.*
Hōră, ae, *f.* *Hour.*
Hostīs, hostīs, *m.* and *f.* *Enemy.*

I.

Idĕm, ădĕm, ĭdĕm. *Same, the same.* See 186.
Ignōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*
Illĕ, illă, illŭd. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.
Illustrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To illustrate, illumine.*
Imāgŏ, ĭmāgĭnĭs, *f.* *Image, picture.*
Impătiens, impătientīs. *Impatient.*
Impĕrātŏr, impĕrātōrĭs, *m.* *Commander.*
Impĕriŭm, ĭī, *n.* *Reign, power, government.*
Impĕtŭs, ūs, *m.* *Attack.*
Imprŏbĭtās, imprŏbĭtātĭs, *f.* *Wickedness.*
In, *prep. with acc.* and *abl.* *Into, in, within.*
Incertŭs, ă, ŭm. *Uncertain.*
Indĭcŏ, indĭcĕrĕ, indixī, indictŭm. *To declare.*
Infestŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To infest.*
Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*
Innŏcens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*
Insānĭă, ae, *f.* *Insanity.*
Insŭlă, ae, *f.* *Island.*
Intĕr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*
Intrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To enter.*
Inventŏr, inventōrĭs, *m.* *Inventor.*
Invītŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To invite.*
Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm. *Self, he, himself.* See 186.
Is, eă, ĭd. *That, he, she, it.*
Istĕ, istă, istŭd. *That, such.* See 186.
Itălĭă, ae, *f.* *Italy.*

J.

Jăciŏ, jăcĕrĕ, jēcī, jactŭm. *To cast, throw, hurl.*
Jăm, *adv.* *Now, already.*
Jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm. *Delightful, pleasant.*
Jūdex, jūdĭcĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Judge.*
Jungŏ, jungĕrĕ, junxī, junctŭm. *To join.*
Justĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Justice.*
Justŭs, ă, ŭm. *Upright, just.*
Jŭvĕnĭs, jŭvĕnĭs, *m.* and *f.* *A youth, young man.*
Jŭventūs, jŭventūtĭs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*

L.

Lăbŏr, lăbōrĭs, *m.* *Labor.*
Lăbōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To strive for, labor, work.*
Lăcĕdaemŏniŭs, ĭī, *m.* *Spartan, a Spartan*, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.
Laetĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Joy.*
Lăpĭs, lăpĭdĭs, *m.* *Stone.*
Lătīnē, *adv.* *In Latin.*
Lătīnŭs, ī, *m.* *Latinus*, a Latin king.
Lātŭs, ă, ŭm. *Broad.*

Laudābĭlĭs, ĕ. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*
Laudŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To praise.*
Laus, laudĭs, *f.* *Praise.*
Lāvīnĭă, æ, *f.* *Lavinia*, a proper name.
Lēgātĭŏ, lēgātĭōnĭs, *f.* *Embassy.*
Lēgātŭs, ī, *m.* *Ambassador.*
Lĕgĭŏ, lĕgĭōnĭs, *f.* *Legion*, a body of soldiers.
Lĕgŏ, lĕgĕrĕ, lēgī, lectŭm. *To choose, appoint.*
Leŏ, leōnĭs, *m.* *Lion.*
Lētālĭs, ĕ. *Mortal, deadly.*
Lex, lēgĭs, *f.* *Law.*
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrī, *m.* *Book.*
Lĭbĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To liberate.*
Lĭbertās, lĭbertātĭs, *f.* *Liberty.*
Longŭs, ă, ŭm. *Long.*
Lūcŭs, ī, *m.* *Grove.*
Lūnă, æ, *f.* *Moon.*
Luscĭnĭă, æ, *f.* *Nightingale.*
Lux, lūcĭs, *f.* *Light.*
Luxŭrĭă, æ, *f.* *Luxury.*
Lўcurgŭs, ī, *m.* *Lycurgus*, a Spartan lawgiver.
Lўsandĕr, Lўsandrī, *m.* *Lysander*, a Spartan general.

M.

Măcĕdŏnĭă, æ, *f.* *Macedonia, Macedon*, a country of Northern Greece.
Măgistĕr, măgistrī, *m.* *Master, teacher.*
Magnŏpĕrĕ, *adv.* *Greatly.*
Magnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Great, large.*
Mălŭm, ī, *n.* *Evil.*
Marcellŭs, ī, *m.* *Marcellus*, a celebrated Roman general.
Mărĕ, mărĭs, *n.* *Sea.*
Mātĕr, mātrĭs, *f.* *Mother.*
Mātūrŭs, ă, ŭm. *Ripe.*
Mĕmŏrĭă, æ, *f.* *Memory.*
Mensă, æ, *f.* *Table.*
Mensis, mensĭs, *m.* *Month.*
Mercēs, mercēdĭs, *f.* *Reward.*
Mĕreŏ, mĕrērĕ, mĕruī, mĕrĭtŭm. *To deserve, merit.*
Meŭs, ă, ŭm. *My.* See 185.
Mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs, *m.* *Soldier.*
Miltiădēs, ĭs, *m.* *Miltiades*, an Athenian general.
Mŏdestĭă, æ, *f.* *Modesty.*
Mŏneŏ, mŏnērĕ, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtŭm. *To advise.*
Mons, montĭs, *m.* *Mountain.*
Monstrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To show, point out.*
Mōră, æ, *f.* *Delay.*
Mors, mortĭs, *f.* *Death.*
Multĭtūdŏ, multĭtūdĭnĭs, *f.* *Multitude.*
Multŭs, ă, ŭm. *Much, many.*
Mundŭs, ī, *m.* *World, universe.*
Mūnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To fortify, defend.*
Mūnŭs, mūnĕrĭs, *n.* *Gift, present.*
Mūrŭs, ī, *m.* *Wall.*
Mūtātĭŏ, mūtātĭōnĭs, *f.* *Change, phase.*

N.

Nātālĭs, ĕ. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*
Nātālĭs diēs. *Birth-day.*
Nātūră, æ, *f.* *Nature.*
Nāvālĭs, ĕ. *Naval.*
Nāvĭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To sail to.*
Nāvĭs, nāvĭs, *f.* *Ship.*
Nĕcessārĭŭs, ă, ŭm. *Necessary.*
Nĕcessĭtās, nĕcessĭtātĭs, *f.* *Necessity.*
Nĕpōs, nĕpōtĭs, *m.* *Grandson.*
Nōbĭlĭs, ĕ. *Noble.*
Nōmĕn, nōmĭnĭs, *n.* *Name.*
Nōmĭnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To call, name.*

Nōn, *adv.* *Not.*
Nonnĕ, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *Yes.* See 346, II., 2.
Nostĕr, nostrā, nostrŭm. *Our, our own, ours.*
Nŏvĭtās, nŏvĭtātĭs, *f.* *Novelty.*
Nŏvŭs, ă, ŭm. *New.*
Nox, noctĭs, *f.* *Night.*
Nūbēs, nūbĭs, *f.* *Cloud.*
Nŭm, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *No.* See 346, II., 1.
Nŭmă, ae, *m.* *Numa,* a Roman king.
Nŭmĕrŭs, ī, *m.* *Number, quantity.*
Nummŭs, ī, *m.* *Money, a piece of money, a coin.*
Nuntiŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To proclaim, announce.*

O.

Obsĕs, obsĭdĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Hostage.*
Occāsŭs, ūs, *m.* *Setting, going down.*
Occŭpŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To occupy, take possession of.*
Octāvŭs, ă, ŭm. *Eighth.*
Octŏ. *Eight.* See 175, 2.
Octōgintā. *Eighty.* See 175, 2.
Oculŭs, ī, *m.* *Eye.*
Odiōsŭs, ă, ŭm. *Odious, hateful.*
Omnĭs, ĕ. *All, every, whole.*
Oppĭdŭm, ī, *n.* *Town, city.*
Oppugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To besiege, take by storm.*
Optŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To wish for, desire.*
Opŭlentŭs, ă, ŭm. *Rich, opulent.*
Opŭs, ŏpĕrĭs, *n.* *Work.*
Orātiŏ, ōrātiōnĭs, *f.* *Oration, speech.*
Orātŏr, ōrātōrĭs, *m.* *Orator.*
Orbĭs, orbĭs, *m.* *Circle.*
Orbĭs terrārŭm. *The world.*
Ornŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To adorn, be an ornament to.*
Ovĭs, ŏvĭs, *f.* *Sheep.*

P.

Părens, părentĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Parent.*
Pāreŏ, pārērĕ, pāruī, pārĭtŭm. *To obey.*
Pars, partĭs, *f.* *Part, portion.*
Parvŭs, ă, ŭm. *Small.*
Passĕr, passĕrĭs, *m.* *Sparrow.*
Pastŏr, pastōrĭs, *m.* *Shepherd.*
Pătĕr, pătrĭs, *m.* *Father.*
Pătriă, ae, *f.* *Native country, country.*
Paulŭs, ī, *m.* *Paulus,* a Roman consul.
Pax, pācĭs, *f.* *Peace.*
Pĕcūniă, ae, *f.* *Money.*
Pellĭs, pellĭs, *f.* *Skin, hide.*
Pĕr, *prep. with acc.* *Of, through.*
Pĕrăgrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To wander through.*
Pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm. *Skilled in.*
Persă, ae, *m.* *A Persian.*
Pēs, pĕdĭs, *m.* *Foot.*
Philippŭs, ī, *m.* *Philip,* king of Macedon.
Philŏsŏphiă, ae, *f.* *Philosophy.*
Philŏsŏphŭs, ī, *m.* *Philosopher.*
Piĕtās, piĕtātĭs, *f.* *Filial affection, piety, duty.*
Pīrātă, ae, *m.* *Pirate.*
Piscĭs, piscĭs, *m.* *Fish.*
Pisistrătŭs, ī, *m.* *Pisistratus,* tyrant of Athens.
Plăceŏ, plăcērĕ, plăcuī, plăcĭtŭm. *To please.*
Plēnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Full.*
Poenŭs, ă, ŭm. *Carthaginian.*
Poenus, ī, *m.* *A Carthaginian.*
Pōmŭm, ī, *n.* *Fruit.*
Pompīliŭs, iī, *m.* *Pompilius,* a Roman name.
Pompēiŭs, iī, *m.* *Pompey,* a celebrated Roman general.
Pondŭs, ponderĭs, *n.* *Weight, mass.*

Portŭs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*
Post, *prep. with acc.* *After.*
Pŏtens, pŏtentĭs. *Powerful, able.*
Praebeŏ, praebērĕ, praebuī, praebĭtŭm. *To show, furnish, give.*
Praeceptŏr, praeceptōrĭs, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*
Praeceptŭm, ī, *n.* *Rule, precept.*
Praeclārŭs, ă, ŭm. *Renowned, distinguished.*
Praedĭcŏ, praedīcĕrĕ, praedixī, praedictŭm. *To predict, foretell.*
Praemiŭm, iī, *n.* *Reward.*
Prātŭm, ī, *n.* *Meadow.*
Prĕtiōsŭs, ă, ŭm. *Valuable.*
Prīmŭs, ă, ŭm. *First.*
Princĭpiŭm, iī, *n.* *Beginning.*
Prō, *prep. with abl.* *In behalf of, for.*
Proeliŭm, iī, *n.* *Battle.*
Prospĕrē, *adv.* *Successfully.*
Prōvŏcō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To challenge.*
Prūdentiă, ae, *f.* *Prudence.*
Publiŭs, iī, *m.* *Publius,* a Roman name.
Puellă, ae, *f.* *Girl.*
Puĕr, puĕrī, *m.* *Boy.*
Pugnă, ae, *f.* *Battle.*
Pugnō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To fight.*
Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm. *Beautiful.*
Pūnĭcŭs, ă, ŭm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*
Pyrrhŭs, ī, *m.* *Pyrrhus,* a king of Epirus.

Q.

Quăm, *conj.* *Than.*
Quartŭs, ă, ŭm. *Fourth.*
Quattuŏr. *Four.* See 175, 2.
Quī, quae, quŏd, *rel. pronoun.* *Who, which, what.* See 187.
Quinquāgintā. *Fifty.* See 175, 2.
Quinquĕ. *Five.* See 175, 2.
Quintŭs, ă, ŭm. *Fifth.*
Quīs, quae, quĭd? *interrog. pronoun.* *Who, which, what?* See 188.
Quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs, *or* quidvīs, *indef. pronoun.* *Whoever, whatever.* See 191.
Quŏtīdiānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Daily.*
Quŏtīdiē, *adv.* *Daily.*

R.

Rāmŭs, ī, *m.* *Branch.*
Rătiō, rătiōnīs, *f.* *Reason.*
Rectē, *adv.* *Rightly.*
Rectŭm, ī, *n.* *Right, rectitude.*
Rĕdūcō, rĕdūcĕrĕ, rĕduxī, rĕductŭm. *To lead back.*
Rēgīnă, ae, *f.* *Queen.*
Rĕgiō, rĕgiōnīs, *f.* *Region, territory.*
Rēgŭlŭs, ī, *m.* *Regulus,* a Roman general.
Regnō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To reign.*
Regnŭm, ī, *n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*
Rĕgō, rĕgĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm. *To rule.*
Rĕnŏvō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To renew.*
Rēs, reī, *f* *Thing, affair.*
Rēs pūblĭcă. *Republic.*
Rĕvŏcō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To recall.*
Rex, rēgĭs, *m.* *King.*
Rhēnŭs, ī, *m.* *Rhine.*
Rōmă, ae, *f.* *Rome.*
Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Roman.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, *m.* *Roman, a Roman.*
Rōmŭlŭs, ī, *m.* *Romulus,* the founder of Rome.

S.

Sāguntŭm, ī, *n.* *Saguntum,* a town in Spain.

Sălūs, sălūtĭs, *f.* *Safety.*
Sălūtārĭs, ĕ. *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*
Sălūtō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To salute.*
Sanctŭs, ă, ŭm. *Holy, sacred.*
Săpiens, săpientĭs. *Wise.*
Săpientĕr, *adv.* *Wisely.*
Săpientiă, ae, *f.* *Wisdom.*
Schŏlă, ae, *f.* *School.*
Scientiă, ae, *f.* *Knowledge.*
Scīpiŏ, Scīpiōnĭs, *m.* *Scipio,* a distinguished Roman.
Scrībō, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm. *To write.*
Scўthae, ārŭm, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*
Sĕcundŭs, ă, ŭm. *Second, favorable.*
Sempĕr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*
Sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrĭs, *m.* *Senator.*
Sĕnātŭs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*
Sĕnectūs, sĕnectūtĭs, *f.* *Old age.*
Sensŭs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*
Sententiă, ae, *f.* *Opinion.*
Sermō, sermōnĭs, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*
Serviō, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To serve.*
Serviŭs, iī, *m.* *Servius,* a Roman proper name.
Servō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To preserve, keep, save.*
Servŭs, ī, *m.* *Slave.*
Sex. *Six.* See 175, 2.
Sĭcĭliă, ae, *f.* *Sicily.*
Sīlentiŭm, iī, *n.* *Silence.*
Sīmĭlĭs, ĕ. *Like.*
Singŭlārĭs, ĕ. *Remarkable, singular.*
Sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, *m.* *Father-in-law.*
Sŏciŭs, iī, *m.* *Ally, associate.*
Sōcrătēs, ĭs, *m.* *Socrates,* the celebrated Athenian philosopher.
Sōl, sōlĭs, *m.* *Sun.*
Sōlōn, Sōlōnĭs, *m.* *Solon,* an Athenian legislator.
Sōlŭm, ī, *n.* *Soil.*
Spartă, ae, *f.* *Sparta,* capital of Laconia.
Spĕciēs, spĕciēī, *f.* *Appearance.*
Spērō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To hope.*
Spēs, spēī, *f.* *Hope.*
Spŏliŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*
Stĭmŭlō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To stimulate.*
Stultĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Folly.*
Suī, sĭbĭ. *Himself, herself, itself.* See 184.
Sŭm, essĕ, fuī. *To be.* See 204.
Sŭpĕrō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To conquer.*
Supplĭciŭm, iī, *n.* *Punishment.*
Suŭs, ă, ŭm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*
Sўrācūsae, ārŭm, *f. plur.* *Syracuse,* a city of Sicily.

T.

Tăceō, tăcērĕ, tăcuī, tăcĭtŭm. *To be silent.*
Tărentŭm, ī, *n.* *Tarentum,* an Italian town.
Tarquĭniŭs, iī, *m.* *Tarquin,* a Roman king.
Tēlŭm, ī, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*
Tĕmĕrĭtās, tĕmĕrĭtātĭs, *f.* *Rashness.*
Templŭm, ī, *n.* *Temple.*
Tempŭs, tempŏrĭs, *n.* *Time.*
Terră, ae, *f.* *Land, earth.*
Terreō, terrērĕ, terruī, territŭm. *To frighten, terrify.*
Tertiŭs, ă, ŭm. *Third.*
Thălēs, ĭs, *m.* *Thales,* a Grecian philosopher.
Thēbānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes* (a city in Greece).

Thēbānŭs, ī, *m.* *A Theban.*
Thĕmistŏclēs, ĭs, *m.* *Themistocles*, a celebrated Athenian.
Thrăsȳbūlŭs, ī, *m.* *Thrasybulus*, the liberator of Athens.
Tīcīnŭs, ī, *m.* *Ticinus*, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.
Trēs, triă. *Three.* See 176.
Trīgintā. *Thirty.* See 175, 2.
Triumphŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To triumph.*
Trōjă, ae, *f.* *Troy*, ancient city in Asia Minor.
Tū, tuī. *Thou, you.* See 184.
Tullĭă, ae, *f.* *Tullia*, a Roman proper name.
Tullŭs, ī, *m.* *Tullus*, a Roman king.
Tŭm, *adv.* *Then, at that time.*
Turrĭs, turrĭs, *f.* *Tower.*
Tuŭs, ă, ŭm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*
Tȳrannŭs, ī, *m.* *Tyrant.*
Tȳriŭs, ă, ŭm. *Tyrian.*

U.

Ulyssēs, ĭs, *m.* *Ulysses*, a Grecian king.
Unĭversŭs, ă, ŭm. *All, the whole, entire.*
Unŭs, ă, ŭm. *One.* See 176.
Urbs, urbĭs, *f.* *City.*
Usŭs, ūs, *m.* *Use.*
Utīlĭs, ĕ. *Useful.*

V.

Vălētūdŏ, vălētūdĭnĭs, *f.* *Health.*
Vărĭĕtās, vărĭĕtātĭs, *f.* *Variety.*
Vărĭŭs, ă, ŭm. *Various.*
Varrŏ, varrōnĭs, *m.* *Varro*, a Roman consul.
Vēr, vērĭs, *n.* *Spring.*
Verbŭm, ī, *n.* *Word.*
Vĕrēcundĭă, ae, *f.* *Modesty.*
Vērĭtās, vērĭtātĭs, *f.* *Truth, verity.*
Vērŭs, ă, ŭm. *True, real.*
Vērŭm, ī, *n.* *Truth.*
Vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm. *Your.*
Vestiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To clothe.*
Vĭă, ae, *f.* *Way, road.*
Victŏr, victōrĭs, *m.* *Victor, conqueror.*
Victōrĭă, ae, *f.* *Victory.*
Victōrĭă, ae, *f.* *Victoria*, Queen of England.
Vĭgĭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To watch, be awake.*
Vīlĭs, ĕ. *Cheap.*
Vindex, vindĭcĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Vindicator, avenger.*
Vĭŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To violate.*
Vĭr, vīrī, *m.* *Man, hero, soldier.*
Virgŏ, virgĭnĭs, *f.* *Maiden, girl.*
Virtūs, virtūtĭs, *f.* *Valor, virtue.*
Vītă, ae, *f.* *Life.*
Vītiŭm, iī, *n.* *Fault, vice.*
Vītŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*
Vīvŏ, vīvĕrĕ, vixī, victŭm. *To live, reside.*
Vŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To call.*
Vŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To fly.*
Vŏluntārĭŭs, ă, ŭm. *Voluntary.*
Vŏluptās, vŏluptātĭs, *f.* *Pleasure.*
Vox, vōcĭs, *f.* *Voice.*
Vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To wound.*
Vulnŭs, vulnĕrĭs, *n.* *Wound.*
Vultŭr, vultŭrĭs, *m.* *Vulture.*
Vultŭs, ūs, *m.* *Countenance.*

X.

Xerxēs, ĭs, *m.* *Xerxes*, a Persian king.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A, an. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.

Acceptable. *Grātŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Admonish. *Admŏnĕŏ, admŏnērĕ, admŏnŭī, admŏnĭtŭm.*

Adorned. *Ornātŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Advise. *Mŏnĕŏ, mŏnērĕ, mŏnŭī, mŏnĭtŭm.*

After. *Post*, prep. with acc.

Against. *Contrā*, prep. with acc. Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

Alexander. *Alexandĕr, Alexandrī*, m.

All. *Omnĭs, ĕ.*

Always. *Sempĕr*, adv.

Announce. *Nuntĭō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Appoint. *Creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Army. *Exercĭtŭs, ūs*, m.

Arrival. *Adventŭs, ūs*, m.

At. *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time.* See 421 and 426.

Athenian. *Athēniensĭs, ĕ.*

Athenian, an Athenian. *Athēniensĭs, ĭs*, m. *and* f.

Athens. *Athēnae, ārŭm*, f. plur.

Attack. *Impĕtŭs, ūs*, m.

Await. *Exspectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

B.

Battle. *Proelĭum, ĭī*, n.

Battle-array. *Aciēs, ēī*, f.

Be. *Sŭm, essĕ, fŭī.*

Be silent. *Tăceŏ, tăcērĕ, tăcuī, tăcĭtŭm.*

Beautiful. *Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm.*

Before. *Antĕ*, prep. with acc.

Bird. *Avĭs, ăvĭs*, f.

Birth-day. *Nātālĭs diēs*, m.

Blame. *Vĭtŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Book. *Lĭbĕr, lĭbrī*, m.

Boy. *Puĕr, puĕrī*, m.

Brave. *Fortĭs, ĕ.*

Bravely. *Fortĭtĕr*, adv.

Bravery. *Vĭrtūs, vĭrtūtĭs*, f.

Bring to a close. *Fĭnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*

Brother. *Frāter, frātrĭs*, m.

Brutus. *Brūtus, ī*, m.

By. *A, ăb*, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

C.

Caius. *Cāĭŭs, ĭī*, m.

Call. *Vŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Camillus. *Cămillŭs, ī*, m.

Can, can have. See *may, may have.*

Carthage. *Carthāgŏ, Carthāgĭnĭs*, f.

Carthaginian. *Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĕ.*

Carthaginian, a Carthaginian. *Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĭs*, m. *and* f.

Cato. *Cătŏ, Cătōnĭs*, m.

Cicero. *Cĭcĕrŏ, Cĭcĕrōnĭs*, m.

Citizen. *Cīvīs, cīvīs,* m. *and* f.
City. *Urbs, urbīs,* f.
Cloud. *Nūbēs, nūbīs,* f.
Commander. *Impĕrātŏr, impĕrātōrīs,* m.
Concerning. *Dē,* prep. with abl.
Consul. *Consŭl, consŭlīs,* m.
Contrary to. *Contrā,* prep. with acc.
Conversation. *Sermō, sermōnīs,* m.
Corinth. *Cŏrinthŭs, ī,* f.
Corinthian. *Cŏrinthiŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cŏrinthiŭs, ī̆,* m.
Cornelius. *Cornēliŭs, ī̆,* m.
Could, could have. See *might, might have.*
Country. *Pātriă, ae,* f.
Courage. *Virtūs, virtūtīs,* f.
Crown. *Cŏrōnă, ae,* f.

D.

Daily. *Quŏtīdiānŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Daughter. *Fīliă, ae,* f.
Day. *Diēs, diēī,* m. See 119, note.
Dear. *Cārŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Declare. *Indīcō, indīcĕrĕ, indixī, indictŭm.*
Delight. *Dēlectō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Desirous of. *Cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm; ăvĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Did. *Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.*
Diligence. *Dīlĭgentiă, ae,* f.
Diligent. *Dīlĭgens, dīlĭgentīs.*
Do. *Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.*

E.

Eight. *Octŏ.* See 175, 2.
Eighth. *Octāvŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Enemy *Hostīs, hostīs,* m. *and* f.
Exercise. *Exercĕō, exercērĕ, exercuī, exercĭtŭm.*
Exile. *Exsŭl, exsŭlīs,* m. *and* f.
Expect. *Exspectō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

F.

Father. *Pătĕr, pătrīs,* m.
Father-in-law. *Sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī,* m.
Fertile. *Fertīlīs, ĕ.*
Fidelity. *Fīdēs, fīdeī,* f.
Field. *Agĕr, ăgrī,* m.
Fifth. *Quintŭs, ŭ, ŭm.*
Fifty. *Quinquāgintā.* See 175, 2.
Fight. *Pugnō, āre, āvī, ātŭm.*
Finish. *Fīnĭō, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Five. *Quinquĕ.* See 175, 2.
Flee. *Fŭgĭō, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm.*
Flower. *Flōs, flōrīs,* m.
Fly. *Vŏlō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Foot. *Pēs, pĕdīs,* m.
Fond of. *Amans, ămantīs.*
For. *Prō,* prep. with abl. In the sense of *because of,* it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of,* by the Dative (384).
Fortify. *Mūnĭō, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Four. *Quattuŏr.* See 175, 2.
Fourth. *Quartŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Friend. *Amīcŭs, ī̆,* m.
Friendship. *Amīcĭtiă, ae,* f.
From. *A, ăb,* prep. with abl.
Fruit. *Fructŭs, ūs,* m.

G.

Garden. *Hortŭs, ī̆,* m.
Gaul. *Gallŭs, ī̆,* m.
Gem. *Gemmă, ae,* f.
General. *Dux, dŭcīs,* m. *and* f.
Gift. *Dōnŭm, ī̆,* n.
Glory. *Glōriă, ae,* f.
Gold. *Aurŭm, ī̆,* n.
Golden. *Aureŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Good. *Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Goodness. *Bŏnĭtās, bŏnĭtātĭs,* f.
Govern. *Rĕgŏ, rĕgĕrĕ, rexī, rectum.*
Great. *Magnŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Greece. *Graecĭă, ae,* f.
Grove. *Lūcŭs, ī,* m.
Guard. *Custōdĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*

H.

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*
Hannibal. *Hannĭbăl, Hannĭbălĭs,* m.
Happy. *Beātŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Have. *Hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm.* Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we *have* loved.
He, she, it. *Is, eă, ĭd; illĕ, illă, illŭd.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.
He himself. *Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm.*
Hear. *Audĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
High. *Altŭs, altă, altŭm.*
Himself. *Suī* (184); *ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm.*
His. *Suŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Hope (verb). *Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Hope (noun). *Spēs, spĕī,* f.
Hour. *Hōră, ae,* f.
Hundred. *Centŭm.* See 175, 2.

I.

I. *Egŏ, meī.* See 184.
In. *In,* prep. with abl.
In behalf of. *Prō,* prep. with abl.
Instruct. *Erŭdĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Instructor. *Praeceptŏr, praeceptōrĭs,* m.
Into. *In,* prep. with acc.
Invite. *Invĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Iron. *Ferrŭm, ī,* n.
Island. *Insŭlă, ae,* f.
It. See *he, she, it.*
Italy. *Ităliă, ae,* f.

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdĭcĭs,* m. *and* f.
Justice. *Justĭtiă, ae,* f.

K.

Keep one's word. *Fĭdĕm servārĕ.* See p. 74, note 4.
Kindly. *Bĕnignē,* adv.
King. *Rex, rēgĭs,* m.
Knowledge. *Scientiă, ae,* f.

L.

Large. *Magnŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Latinus. *Lătīnŭs, ī,* m.
Lavinia. *Lāvīniă, ae,* f.
Law. *Lex, lēgĭs,* f.
Lead. *Dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm.*
Lead back. *Rĕdūcŏ, rĕdūcĕrĕ, rĕduxī, rĕductŭm.*
Lead forth. *Edūcŏ, ēdūcĕrĕ, ēduxī, ēductŭm.*
Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.
Leader. *Dux, dŭcĭs,* m. *and* f.
Letter. *Epistŏlă, ae,* f.
Liberate. *Lĭbĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Life. *Vītă, ae,* f.
Like. *Sīmĭlĭs, ĕ.*
Love. *Amŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Măcĕdŏniă, ae,* f.
Man. *Hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs,* m. *Vīr, vĭrī,* m. The latter is used as a term of respect; *a true* or *worthy man, a hero.*
Many. *Multī, ae, ă,* plur.
May, can. *Signs of the Present Subjunctive.*
May have, can have. *Signs of the Perfect Subjunctive.*
Me. See *I.*
Memory. *Mĕmŏriă, ae,* f.

Might, could, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*
Might have, could have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
Mind. *Anĭmŭs, ī,* m.
Moat. *Fossă, ae,* f.
Money. *Pĕcūnĭă, ae,* f.
Month. *Mensĭs, mensĭs,* m.
More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.
Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.
Mound. *Aggĕr, aggĕrĭs,* m.
Mountain. *Mons, montĭs,* m.
Much. *Multŭm,* adv.
My. *Mĕŭs, ă, ŭm.* See 185.

N.

Name. *Nōmĕn, nōmĭnĭs,* n.
Nightingale. *Luscĭnĭă, ae,* f.
Noble. *Nōbĭlĭs, ĕ.*
Not. *Nōn,* adv. Interrogative, *nonnĕ.*

O.

Obey. *Pārĕō, pārērĕ, pāruī, pārĭtŭm.*
Observe. *Servŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Occupy. *Occŭpŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.
Of itself. *Pĕr sē.*
On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.
One. *Unŭs, ă, ŭm.* See 176.
Oration. *Orātĭō, ōrātĭōnĭs,* f.
Orator. *Orātŏr, ōrātōrĭs,* m.
Our. *Nostĕr, tră, trŭm.*

P.

Parent. *Părens, părentĭs,* m. *and* f.
Philip. *Phĭlippŭs, ī,* m.
Pisistratus. *Pisĭstrătŭs, ī,* m.
Please. *Plăcĕō, plăcērĕ, plăcuī, plăcĭtŭm.*
Pleasing. *Grātŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Pleasure. *Vŏluptās, vŏluptātĭs,* f.
Plough. *Arŏ, ărārĕ, ărāvī, ărātŭm.*
Plunder (verb). *Spŏlĭŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Practise. *Exercĕō, exercērĕ, exercuī, exercĭtŭm.*
Praise (verb). *Laudŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Praise (noun). *Laus, laudĭs,* f.
Precept. *Praeceptŭm, ī,* n.
Predict. *Praedĭcŏ, praedĭcērĕ, praedixī, praedictŭm.*
Present (noun). *Dōnŭm, ī.* n.
Publius. *Publĭŭs, ĭī,* m.
Punish. *Pūnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Pupil. *Discĭpŭlŭs, ī,* m.
Put to flight. *Fŭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Q.

Queen. *Rēgīnă, ae,* f.

R.

Receive. *Accĭpĭŏ, accĭpĕrĕ, accēpī, acceptŭm.*
Reign, royal authority. *Regnŭm, ī,* n.
Renowned. *Clārŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Reside. *Hăbĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Rhine. *Rhēnŭs, ī,* m.
River. *Amnĭs, amnĭs,* m.
Roman. *Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Roman, a Roman. *Rōmānŭs, ī,* m.
Rome. *Rōma, ae,* f.
Romulus. *Rōmŭlŭs, ī,* m.
Rule. *Rĕgŏ, rĕgĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm.*

S.

Safety. *Sălŭs, sălūtĭs,* f.
Same. *Idĕm, eădĕm, ĭdĕm.* See 186.
Say. *Dicŏ, dicĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm.*

Save. *Servŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Scipio. *Scīpiŏ, Scīpiōnīs,* m.
Senator. *Sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrĭs,* m.
Serve. *Serviŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Servius. *Serviŭs, ĭī,* m.
Setting. *Occāsŭs, ūs,* m.
Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
Shepherd. *Pastŏr, pastōrĭs,* m.
Should, should have. See *might, might have.*
Show. *Monstrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Sicily. *Sĭcĭlĭă, ae,* f.
Silent. See *be silent.*
Silver. *Argentŭm, ī,* n.
Sing. *Cantŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Singing, a song. *Cantŭs, ūs,* m.
Six. *Sex.* See 175, 2.
Slave. *Servŭs, ī,* m.
Sleep. *Dormiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Soldier. *Mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs,* m.
Somebody, some one. *Alĭquĭs, ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd,* or *ălĭquŏd.* See 191.
Son. *Fīlĭŭs, ĭī,* m.
Son-in-law. *Gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī,* m.
Song. *Carmĕn, carmĭnĭs,* n.
Speak. *Dīcŏ, dicĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm.*
State. *Cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātĭs,* f.
Strengthen. *Firmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Sun. *Sōl, sōlĭs,* m.
Sunset. *Occāsŭs sōlĭs.*
Sword. *Glădiŭs, ĭī,* m.

T.

Take. *Căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm.*
Take by storm. *Expugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Tarquin. *Tarquīnĭŭs, ĭī,* m.
Tell. *Dīcŏ, dicĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm.*
Temple. *Templŭm, ī,* n.
Ten. *Dĕcĕm.* See 175, 2.
Terrify. *Terrĕŏ, terrĕrĕ, terruī, terrĭtŭm.*
Than. *Quăm.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.
That. *Illĕ, illă, illŭd.* See 186.
The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
Their. *Suŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Then. *Tŭm,* adv.
Thing. *Rēs, rēī,* f.
This. *Hīc, haec, hŏc.* See 186.
Three. *Trēs, trĭă.* See 176.
Time. *Tempŭs, tempŏrĭs,* n.
To. *Ad, ĭn,* preps. with acc. *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384
True. *Vērŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Truth. *Vērŭm, ī,* n.
Tullia. *Tŭllĭă, ae,* f.
Two. *Duŏ, duae, duŏ.* See 176.
Tyrant. *Tўrannŭs, ī,* m.

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs,* m.
Useful. *Utīlĭs, ĕ.*

V.

Valor. *Vīrtūs, virtūtĭs,* f.
Valuable. *Prĕtĭōsŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.
Victoria. *Victōrĭă, ae,* f.
Victory. *Victōrĭă, ae,* f.
Violate. *Viŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Virtue. *Vīrtūs, virtūtĭs,* f.

W.

Walk. *Ambŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
War. *Bellŭm, ī,* n.

Way. *Vĭă, ae,* f.
Well. *Bĕnĕ,* adv.
Who, which (relative). *Quī, quae, quŏd.* See 187.
Who, which, what (interrogative)? *Quīs, quae, quĭd? quī, quae, quŏd?* See 188.
Wide. *Lātŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Wife. *Conjux, conjŭgĭs,* f.
Will, will have. See *shall, shall have.*
Winter. *Hiems, hiĕmĭs,* f.
Wisdom. *Săpientiă, ae,* f.
Wise. *Săpiens, săpientĭs.*
With. *Cum,* prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.
Word. *Verbŭm, ī,* n. To keep one's word, *fĭdĕm servārĕ.* See p. 74, note 4.
Would, would have. See *might, might have.*
Wound. *Vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Write. *Scrībŏ, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm.*

Y.

Year. *Annŭs, ī,* m.
You. *Tū, tuī.* See 184.
Your. *Tuŭs, ă, ŭm; vestĕr, vestrā, vestrŭm.*
Yourself. *Tū, tū ipsĕ.*

Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar.

This work is intended especially for those who do not contemplate a collegiate course, but it may be successfully used in any school where, for special reasons, a small grammar is deemed desirable. The beginner needs to store his mind at the outset with the laws of the language in such forms of statement as he can carry with him throughout his whole course of study. The convenience and interest of the student in this regard have been carefully consulted in the preparation of this manual. All the paradigms, rules, and discussions, have been introduced in the exact language of the author's Grammar, by which it may at any time be supplemented. While, therefore, in many schools this work will be found a sufficient Latin Grammar, it may be used in others, either as preparatory to the larger Grammar, or in connection with it.

No separate references to this volume will ever be needed in editions of Latin authors, as the numbering of the articles is the same as in the larger Grammar.

From Pres. COBLEIGH, *Tennessee Wesleyan University.*

"This work is very timely. I regard it as indispensable in many schools in the South."

From Prof. W. H. YOUNG, *Ohio University.*

"I most heartily commend this work. I have for some time felt its need. It seems to make your Latin course complete."

From Prof. C. G. HUDSON, *Genesee Wesleyan Seminary, Lima, N. Y.*

"I can heartily recommend it. I think that it is superior to all rivals."

From Prof. H. D. WALKER, *Orangeville Academy, Pa.*

"In my opinion, no work of Professor Harkness will be more widely used, or more valuable, than this. It supplies a want long felt by teachers. It is clear, thorough, and sufficiently extended for ordinary students."

From Prof. S. H. MANLEY, *Cornell College, Iowa.*

"I think it one of the finest compendiums of Grammar I have ever seen. It must prove of great service as a preparatory drill-book."

From Prof. L. F. PARKER, *Iowa College.*

"I feel under personal obligation for this new incentive and aid to classical study."

From H. F. LANE, *High School, Templeton, Mass.*

"It is *exactly* adapted to our wants. We use all of Harkness's books—Grammar, Reader, and Composition. We consider them emphatically 'the best.'"

From Prof. J. A. KELLER, *Heidelberg College, Ohio.*

"I was surprised to find so full an outline of Latin Grammar comprised within such narrow limits."

From Prof. M. B. BROWN, *Notre-Dame University.*

"In my opinion, it is just the book which has long been needed. It is a book to be learned *entire*, and is complete as far as it goes. Prof. Harkness deserves the thanks both of students and teachers."

From Rev. B. G. NORTHROP, *Secretary of Board of Education, Conn.*

"I am highly pleased with Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar. Its brevity commends it for beginners and for all contemplating a partial Latin course of study."

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D. D., *New York Free Academy.*

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, *Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.*

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, *Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, *Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.*

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, *State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.*

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, *Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.*

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this 'a *useful* book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features.

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, *President of Waterville College.*

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, *Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

From Prof. J. J. STANTON, *Bates College.*

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, *Principal Cambridge High School.*

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, *Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.*

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

From Mr. D. B. HAGER, *Princ. Eliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.*

"This is, in my opinion, *by far the best Latin Grammar ever published.* It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive, and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Prof. C. S. Harrington *and* Prof. J. C. Van Benschoten, *of the Wesleyan University.*

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

From Mr. Elbridge Smith, *Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.*

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

From Mr. H. A. Pratt, *Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.*

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

From Mr. I. F. Cady, *Principal High School, Warren, R. I.*

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

From Messrs. S. Thurber *and* T. B. Stockwell, *Public High School, Providence.*

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

From Mr. C. B. Goff, *Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.*

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

From Rev. Prof. M. H. Buckham, *University of Vermont.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

From Mr. E. T. Quimby, *Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.*

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

From Mr. H. Orcutt, *Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.*

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

From Mr. Charles Jewett, *Principal of Franklin Academy.*

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use; in the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

From Mr. C. C. Chase, *Principal of Lowell High School.*

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

From Mr. J. Kimball, *High School, Dorchester, Mass.*

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."

Arnold's Latin Course :

I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR. Revised and Carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 359 pages.

II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION, Revised and carefully corrected by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 356 pages.

III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin, in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo, 350 pages.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which Nature herself points out to the child learning his mother-tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put into the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonymes are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

From N. WHEELER, *Principal of Worcester County High School.*

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and symplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

From A. B. RUSSELL, *Oakland High School.*

"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

From C. M. BLAKE, *Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.*

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now."

Harkness's Cæsar.

This edition of Cæsar's Commentaries, intended to follow the Latin Reader, aims to introduce the student to an appreciative study of Latin authors. The text is the result of a careful collation of the several editions most approved by European scholars. The notes are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the learner, and to furnish him such collateral information as will enable him to understand the stirring events recorded in the Commentaries, and such special aid as will enable him to surmount real difficulties of construction and idiom. They will thus, it is hoped, render an acceptable service both to the instructor and the learner, by lightening the burden of the one, and by promoting the progress of the other. The dictionary has been prepared with special reference to the wants of the student.

The Life of Cæsar, the Map of Gaul, and the diagrams and illustrations which accompany the notes, will greatly add to the value of the work.

From Pres. AIKIN, *Union College, N. Y.*

"This edition of the Commentaries is admirably suited, not merely to give the student an acquaintance with his immediate text-book, but also to develop those habits of investigation, that thoughtfulness in regard to the scope of the whole subject, and that style of vigorous, tasteful, and idiomatic rendering, which are among the rarest, as they are certainly among the most important, results of classical study."

From S. H. TAYLOR, LL. D., *Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.*

"The notes are prepared with a judicious appreciation of the wants of the pupil. They show the hand of the finished scholar, as well as of the experienced teacher."

From Prof. W. A. PACKARD, *Princeton College, N. J.*

"The notes are models of what the beginner needs to interest and guide him. The text is furnished with the best illustrations in the way of maps and plans."

From Prof. W. T. JOHNSON, *Notre-Dame University, Ind.*

"This is certainly an excellent text-book—superior to any other edition of the Commentaries now in use."

From Pres. MCELDOWNEY, *Albion College, Mich.*

"This is the most valuable edition of Cæsar with which I am acquainted."

From Prof. H. W. HAYNES, *University of Vermont.*

"Never before have I seen such a lucid and simple explanation of Cæsar's bridge across the Rhine."

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON, *Wesleyan University, Conn.*

"The student who uses this edition must read Cæsar with a lively relish."

From Prof. W. A. STEVENS, *Denison University Ohio.*

"The notes are gotten up on the right principle, and are greatly superior to those of similar works in England."

From Prof. J. E. GINTNER, *Otterbein University, Ohio.*

"This is the only edition of Cæsar recommended to our classes."

From A. D. SANDBORN, *Wilton Seminary, Iowa.*

"I know of no work of the kind in which the notes so fully meet the wants of both teacher and pupil. I am delighted with the life of Cæsar."

From Prof. S. HASSELL, *State Normal University, Del.*

"This edition of Cæsar is superior to all others published in this country. The biographical sketch of the Roman commander is a splendid production."

Arnold's First Latin Book;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

From W. E. TOLMAN, *Instructor in Providence High School.*

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

From WM. RUSSELL, *Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.*

"The form which this work has taken under the skillful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

From GEORGE CAPRON, *Principal of Worcester High School.*

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

From J. R. BOISE, *Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.*

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

Second Latin Book.

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

From J. A. SPENCER, D. D., *late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, etc., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

From PROF. GAMMELL, *of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

From PROF. LINCOLN, *of Brown University.*

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skilfully-formed exercises with systematic instruction."

From J. J. OWEN, D. D., *Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

From PROF. ANDERSON, *of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, a Map of Gaul, etc. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 408 pages.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His Notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a Map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

Quintus Curtius:

Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes. By WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo, 385 pages.

Curtius's History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

From PROF. OWEN, *of the New York Free Academy.*

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm. Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding, being just what a text-book should be, neat, clear, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholar-like, neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean so desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment."

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., *New York Free Academy.*

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, *Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.*

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, *Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, *Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.*

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, *State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.*

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, *Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.*

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this 'a *useful* Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features.

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, *President of Waterville College.*

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, *Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

From Prof. J. J. STANTON, *Bates College.*

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, *Principal Cambridge High School.*

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, *Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.*

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

From Mr. D. B. HAGER, *Princ. Eliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.*

"This is, in my opinion, *by far the best Latin Grammar ever published.* It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive, and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON *and* Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, *of the Wesleyan University.*

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, *Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.*

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

From Mr. H. A. PEATT, *Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.*

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

From Mr. I. F. CADY, *Principal High School, Warren, R. I.*

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

From Messrs. S. THURBER *and* T. B. STOCKWELL, *Public High School, Providence.*

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

From Mr. C. B. GOFF, *Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.*

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, *University of Vermont.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, *Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.*

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

From Mr. H. ORCUTT, *Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.*

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, *Principal of Franklin Academy.*

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use. In the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

From Mr. C. C. CHASE, *Principal of Lowell High School.*

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

From Mr. J. KIMBALL, *High School, Dorchester, Mass.*

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."